EUGOWRA OVAL CHANGEROOMS REFRUBISHMENT

Refurbishment of Eugowra Oval Changeroom Building

Architectural Specification

This specification applies to the refurbishment of the Eugowra Oval Changerooms, Eugowra Sportsground.

Revision	Date	Approved by
Issue for Tender	14/04/2025	Patrick Leal

Cabonne Council
PO Box 17
Molong NSW 2866

TABLE OF CONTENTS

0131 PRELIMINARIES

1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL

General conditions

Refer to General Conditions of Contract & Preliminaries.

Interpretation

General: The words owner and architect have the same meaning, respectively, as principal and contract administrator, unless the context requires otherwise.

Cross reference: **INTERPRETATION** in *0171 General requirements* also applies.

1.2 BUILDING THE WORKS

Survey marks

Definition: A survey peg, benchmark, reference mark, signal, alignment, level mark or any other mark used or intended to be used for the purpose of setting out, checking or measuring the work.

Care of survey marks: Preserve and maintain the owner's survey marks in their true positions.

Rectification: If survey marks are disturbed or obliterated, immediately rectify.

Safety

Accidents: Promptly notify the architect of the occurrence of the following:

- Accidents involving death or personal injury.
- Accidents involving loss of time.
- Incidents with accident potential such as equipment failure, slides and cave-ins.

Accident reports: Submit reports of accidents.

- Purpose of submission: For information.

Contractor's representative

General: Must be accessible, and fluent in English and technical terminology.

Contacts: Submit names and telephone numbers of responsible persons who may be contacted after hours during the course of the contract.

- Purpose of submission: For information.
- Timing of submission: At the first site meeting.

Subcontracting

General: Submit a complete list of proposed subcontractors and suppliers.

- Purpose of submission: For information.

Program of work

Construction program: Submit a construction program showing the following:

- Sequence of work.
- Critical paths of activities related to the work.
- Allowance for holidays.
- Activity inter-relationships.
- External dependencies including provision of access, document approvals and work by others.
- Periods within which various stages or parts of the work are to be executed.

Time scale: Working days.

Updated program: Identify changes since the previous issue, and show the estimated percentage of completion for each item of work.

Purpose of submission: For information.

Program chart: Display in the contractor's site office an up-to-date bar chart and network diagram based on the construction program.

Site meetings
General: Hold and attend site meetings throughout the contract and arrange for the attendance of appropriate subcontractors, architect and appropriate consultants.

Minutes: Make a record of site meetings. Distribute a copy of the minutes to each party.

- Purpose of submission: For review.
- Timing of submission: Within 5 working days after each meeting.

Progress photographs
General: Take colour progress photographs within 5 working days, before each site meeting. Submit 2 sets of prints and the digital files. Identify the project, date, time, location and orientation.

- Purpose of submission: For information.
- Timing of submission: At each site meeting.

Changes to existing items
General: At least 5 working days before changing existing items, give notice.

Control of runoff stormwater

Persons other than contractor
Facilities: Refer to person other than contractor documentation.

Contractor/person other than contractor interfaces: Refer to person other than contractor documentation.

1.3 COMPLETION OF THE WORKS

Final cleaning
General: Before the date for practical completion, clean throughout, including interior and exterior surfaces exposed to view. Vacuum carpeted and soft surfaces. Clean debris from the site, roofs, gutters, downpipes and drainage systems. Remove waste and surplus materials.

Samples: Remove non-incorporated samples, prototypes and sample panels.

Reinstatement
General: Before the date for practical completion, clean and repair damage caused by installation or use of temporary work and restore existing facilities used during construction to original condition.

Adjoining properties
Evaluation: At practical completion, for each property documented in the **Error! Reference source not found.**, inspect the property with the architect and owner and occupant of the property, recording any damage that has occurred since the pre-commencement inspection.

Removal of plant
General: Within 10 working days after practical completion, remove temporary works and construction plant no longer required. Remove the balance before the end of the defects liability period.

0171 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1 GENERAL

1.1 PRECEDENCE

General

Order of precedence: If there is conflict or inconsistency between the worksections of this specification, the requirements of worksections take the following order of precedence:

- All worksections other than those listed below.
- *0701 Mechanical systems, 0801 Hydraulic systems, 0901 Electrical systems* and *1001 Fire services systems.*
- *018 Common requirements* worksections.
- *0171 General requirements*.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

Common requirements

Requirement: Conform to the following worksections:

- *0181 Adhesives, sealants and fasteners*.
- *0182 Fire-stopping*.
- *0183 Metals and prefinishes*.
- *0184 Termite management*.
- *0185 Timber products, finishes and treatment*.

Cross referencing styles

General: Within the text, titles are cross referenced using the following styles:

- Worksection titles are indicated by *Italicised* text.
- Subsection titles are indicated by CAPITAL text.
- Clause titles are indicated by **BOLD CAPITAL** text.
- Subclause titles are indicated by **Bold Sentence case** text.

1.3 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

General

Precedence: The requirements of worksections override conflicting requirements of their referenced documents. The requirements of the referenced documents are minimum requirements.

Contractual relationships: Responsibilities and duties of the principal, contractor and contract administrator are not altered by requirements in the documents referenced in this specification.

Current editions: All referenced documents are the editions, with amendments, current on 1st March 2024.

Exception to current editions: If statutory requirements reference other editions or standards, conform to those other editions or standards. If the NCC (2022) references editions other than the current edition, the same editions cited in the NCC (2022) are referenced in each worksection.

Maintenance and repair works: If statutory requirements applicable to the maintenance or repair works reference other editions or standards, conform to those other editions or standards.

European standards: Any national European Standard (e.g. IS EN or DIN EN) may be used in place of the equivalent referenced European Standard (EN).

1.4 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

Services diagrammatic layouts

General: Layouts of service lines, plant and equipment shown on the drawings are diagrammatic only, except where figured dimensions are provided or calculable.

Before commencing work:

- Obtain measurements and other necessary information.
- Coordinate the design and installation in conjunction with all trades.

Levels
General: Spot levels take precedence over contour lines and ground profile lines.

Drawings and manuals for existing services
Subsurface services: Information shown on the drawings relating to underground or submerged services is accurate to the following quality level:

- Quality level to AS 5488.1 (2022): D

Warranty: No warranty is given as to the completeness or accuracy of drawings and/or manuals of existing services.

1.5 INTERPRETATION

Abbreviations
General: For the purposes of this specification the following abbreviations apply:

- AS: Australian Standard.
- BCA: National Construction Code Series Volume One: Building Code of Australia Class 2 to 9 Buildings and Volume Two: Building Code of Australia Class 1 and Class 10 Buildings.
- EN: European Norm (European Standard).
- GRP: Glass Reinforced Plastic.
- IP: Ingress protection.
- NATA: National Association of Testing Authorities.
- NCC: National Construction Code.
- NZS: New Zealand Standard.
- PCA: National Construction Code Series Volume 3: Plumbing Code of Australia.
- PVC: Polyvinyl Chloride.
- PVC-U: Unplasticised Polyvinyl Chloride. Also known as UPVC.
- SDS: Safety data sheets.
- VOC: Volatile Organic Compound.
- WHS: Work Health and Safety.

Definitions
General: For the purposes of this specification, the following definitions apply:

- Access for maintenance: Includes access for maintenance, inspection, measurement, operation, adjustment, repair, replacement and other maintenance related tasks.
- Accessible, readily: Readily accessible, easily accessible, easy access and similar terms mean capable of being reached quickly and without the use of a tool, without hazard, climbing over or removing obstructions, using a movable ladder, and in any case not more than 2.0 m above the ground, floor or platform.
- Accredited Testing Laboratory:
  . An organisation accredited by the National Association of Testing Authorities (NATA) to undertake the relevant tests; or
  . An organisation outside Australia accredited to undertake the relevant tests by an authority recognised by NATA through a mutual recognition agreement; or
  . An organisation recognised as being an Accredited Testing Laboratory under legislation at the time the test was undertaken.
  . An organisation accredited for compliance with AS ISO/IEC 17025 (2018) to undertake the relevant tests.
- Appropriately qualified person: To NCC (2022) Schedule 1.
- Attendance: Attendance, provide attendance and similar expressions mean give assistance for examination and testing.
- Baseline data: Data derived from the final design, installation and commissioning, which serve as a basis for verification of results of routine servicing.
- Commissioning: Advancement of an installation from static completion to full working order, including verification that the systems, subsystems, and their components meet the project requirements. This includes all work described as commissioning in referenced documents, even if carried out before static completion.
- Consumable: Materials or components intended to be replaced within the service life of the associated plant or equipment.

- Contract administrator: Has the same meaning as architect, superintendent or principal's authorised person and is the person appointed by the owner or principal under the contract.
- Contractor: Has the same meaning as builder and is the person or organisation bound to carry out and complete the work under the contract.
- Default: Specified value, product or installation method that is to be provided unless otherwise documented.
- Design life: The period of time for which it is assumed, in the design, that an asset will be able to perform its intended purpose with only anticipated maintenance but no major repair or replacement being necessary.
- Design parameters: Information used as the basis for design. It includes design requirements, performance criteria, performance parameters and similar terms.
- Documented: Documented, as documented and similar terms mean contained in the contract documents.
- Economic life: The period of time from the acquisition of an asset to the time when the asset, while still physically capable of fulfilling its function and with only anticipated maintenance, ceases to be the lowest cost alternative for satisfying that function.
- Electricity distributor: Any person or organisation that provides electricity from an electricity distribution system to one or more electrical installations. Includes distributor, supply authority, network operator, local network service provider, electricity retailer or electricity entity, as may be appropriate in the relevant jurisdiction.
- Errors and omissions: For the design prepared by the contractor, errors and omissions have the same meaning as defects.
- Fire hazard properties: To NCC (2022) Schedule 1.
- Gas Network Operator: Has the same meaning as network operator in AS/NZS 5601.1 (2022).
- Geotechnical site investigation: The process of evaluating the geotechnical characteristics of the site in the context of existing or proposed construction.
- Give notice: Give notice, submit, advise, inform and similar expressions mean give notice (submit, advise, inform) in writing to the contract administrator.
- High level interface: Systems transfer information in a digital format using an open system interface.
- Hot-dip galvanized: Zinc coated to AS/NZS 4680 (2006) after fabrication with coating thickness and mass to AS/NZS 4680 (2006) Table 1.
- Ingress protection: IP, IP code, IP rating and similar expression have the same meaning as IP Code in AS 60529 (2004).
- Joints: Construction joint: A joint with continuous reinforcement provided to suit construction sequence.
  . Contraction joint: An opening control joint with a bond breaking coating separating the joint surfaces to allow independent and controlled contraction of different parts or components, induced by shrinkage, temperature changes or other causes. It may include unbound dowels to assist vertical deflection control.
  . Control joint: An unreinforced joint between or within discrete elements of construction that allows for relative movement of the elements.
  . Expansion joint: A closing control joint with the joint surfaces separated by a compressible filler to allow axial movement due to thermal expansion or contraction with changes in temperature or creep. It may include unbound dowels to assist vertical deflection control.
  . Sealant joint: A joint filled with a flexible synthetic compound that adheres to surfaces within the joint to prevent the passage of dust, moisture and gases.
  . Structural control joint: A control joint (contraction, expansion and isolation) in structural elements when used with applied material and finishes.
  . Substrate joint: A joint in the substrate, which includes construction joints and joints between different materials.
  . Weakened plane joint: A contraction joint created by forming a groove, extending at least one quarter the depth of the section, either by using a grooving tool, by sawing, or by inserting a premoulded strip.
- Local authority (local council): A body established for the purposes of local government by or under a law applying in a state or territory.
- Low level interface: Systems transfer information via terminals and voltage free contacts.
- Manufacturer's recommendations: Recommendations, instructions, requirements, specifications (and similar expressions) provided in written or other form by the manufacturer and/or supplier relating to the suitability, use, installation, storage and/or handling of a product.
- Metallic-coated: Steel coated with zinc or aluminium-zinc alloy as follows:
  . Metallic-coated steel sheet: To AS 1397 (2021). Metal thicknesses specified are base metal thicknesses.

  . Ferrous open sections zinc coated by an in-line process: To AS/NZS 4791 (2006).
  . Ferrous hollow sections zinc coated by a continuous or specialised process: To AS/NZS 4792 (2006).
- Network Utility Operator: To NCC (2022) Schedule 1. A person who undertakes the piped distribution of drinking water or non-drinking water for supply; or is the operator of a sewerage system or a stormwater drainage system.
- Obtain: Obtain, seek and similar expressions mean obtain (seek) in writing from the contract administrator.
- Pipe: Includes pipe and tube.
- Practical completion or defects free completion: The requirements for these stages of completion are defined in the relevant building contract for the project.
- Pre-commissioning: Verifying that the installation of a system is complete and ready for commissioning.
- Principal: Principal has the same meaning as owner, client and proprietor and is the party to whom the contractor is legally bound to construct the works.
- Professional engineer: To NCC (2022) Schedule 1.
- Proprietary: Identifiable by naming the manufacturer, supplier, installer, trade name, brand name, catalogue or reference number.
- Prototype: A full size mock-up of components, systems or elements to demonstrate or test construction methods, junctions and finishes, and to define the level of quality.
- Provide: Provide and similar expressions mean supply and install and include development of the design beyond that documented.
- Record drawings: Record drawings has the same meaning as as-installed drawings, as-built drawings and work-as-executed drawings.
- Recovered/reclaimed materials: Material previously used in a building or project that is then re-used in another project. The material may be altered, re-sized, refinished, or adapted, but is not reprocessed in any way, and remains in its original form.
- Referenced documents: Standards and other documents whose requirements are included in this specification by reference.
- Required: Required by the contract documents, the local or statutory authorities.
  . If required: A conditional specification term for work that may be shown in the documents or is a legislative requirement.
- Sample: A physical example that illustrates workmanship, materials or equipment, and establishes standards by which the work will be judged. It includes samples and sample panels.
- Static completion: The state of a system when installation works are complete but have not been commissioned.
- Statutory authority: A public sector entity created by legislation, that is, a specific law of the Commonwealth, State or Territory.
- Supply: Supply, furnish and similar expressions mean supply only.
- Tests - integrated system: Tests conducted on the project as a complete, integrated system to verify successful integration, interaction, and operation of all interrelated systems to the project requirements.
- Tests - production: Tests carried out on an item, before delivery to the site.
- Tests - site: Tests carried out on site.
- Tests - type: Tests carried out on an item identical with a production item, including with respect to materials, material suppliers, manufacturing processes, dimensions and marking.
- Tolerance: The permitted difference between the upper limit and the lower limit of dimension, value or quantity.
- Utility service provider: Includes Electricity distributor, Network Utility Operator, Gas Network Operator and organisations providing other reticulated utilities including data and telecommunications services.
- Verification: Provision of evidence or proof that a performance requirement has been met or a default exists.

2 SUBMISSIONS AND INSPECTIONS

2.1 SUBMISSIONS

General

Requirement: Make submissions, as documented.

Contractor review: Before submitting, review each submission item, and check for coordination with other work of the contract and conformance to contract documents.

Submission times

Default timing: Submit information or other material for information, comment or approval at least 5 working days before ordering products or starting installation of the respective portion of the works.

Proposed products schedules: Submit a schedule of proposed products that have not been specified as proprietary items within 3 weeks of starting work on site.

Identification

Requirement: Identify the project, contractor, subcontractor or supplier, manufacturer, applicable product, model number and options, as appropriate and include relevant contract document references. If the submission covers more than one item, identify the item in the contract documents the submitted items relate to.

Non-conformance: Identify proposals that do not conform with project requirements, and characteristics that may be detrimental to successful performance of the completed work.

Errors

Requirement: If a submission contains errors, make a new or amended submission as appropriate, indicating changes made since the previous submission.

Project requirements

General: Submit the following, as documented:

- Authority approvals: Notes of meetings with regulatory authorities and utility service providers whose requirements apply to the work and evidence that notices, fees and permits have been sought and paid, that utility service provider connections are complete and that statutory approvals by the authorities whose requirements apply to the work have been received.
- Baseline data: To **BASELINE DATA**.
- Building penetrations: Details of the methods to maintain the required structural, fire and other properties to **BUILDING PENETRATIONS**.
- Certification: Certificates of conformance to documented requirements.
- Design documentation: Drawings, calculations and specifications as documented.
- Electronic facility and asset management information: For the whole of the work to **Error! Reference source not found.**.
- Execution details: Execution programs, schedules and details of proposed methods and equipment. For building services include the following:
  - . Embedded services: Proposed method for embedding services in concrete walls or floors or chasing into concrete or masonry walls.
  - . Fixing of services: Typical details of locations, types and methods of fixing services to the building structure.
  - . Inaccessible services: If services will be enclosed and not accessible after completion, submit proposals for location of service runs and fittings.
- Fire performance: Evidence of conformity to requirement for combustibility, fire hazard properties and fire-resistance of building elements.
- Marking and labelling: Samples and schedules of proposed marking and labels to **MARKING AND LABELLING**.
- Operation and maintenance manuals: For the whole of the work to **OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**.
- Products and materials: Products and materials data, including manufacturer’s technical specifications and drawings, product data sheets, type tests results, evidence of conformity to documented requirements, product certification, performance and rating tables, service connection requirements and installation and maintenance recommendations.
- Records: As-built documents, photographs, system diagrams, schedules and logbooks to **RECORD DRAWINGS**.
- Safe Work Method Statement: For high risk construction works.
- Samples: Representative of proposed products and materials and including proposals to incorporate samples into the works, if any to **SAMPLES AND PROTOTYPES**.
- Shop drawings: To **SHOP DRAWINGS**.
- Substitutions: To **SUBSTITUTIONS**.
- Tests: Test reports for testing performed under the contract.
- Warranties: To **WARRANTIES**.

2.2 INSPECTION

Notice
Concealment: If notice of inspection is required for parts of the works that are to be concealed, give notice when the inspection can be made before concealment.

Notification times
Minimum notice: As documented.

Light levels
Lighting levels for inspection: To AS/NZS 1680.2.4 (2017).

Attendance
General: Provide attendance for documented inspections and tests.

3 PERFORMANCE

3.1 CORROSION RESISTANCE

Atmospheric corrosivity category
General: Atmospheric corrosivity category as defined in AS 4312 (2019):

- Exterior atmospheric corrosivity category: C2
- Interior atmospheric corrosivity category: C1

Galvanizing
Severe conditions: Galvanize mild steel components (including fasteners) to AS/NZS 1214 (2016) or AS/NZS 4680 (2006) as appropriate, if:

- Exposed to weather.
- Embedded in masonry.
- Exposed to or in air spaces behind the external leaf of masonry walls.
- In contact with chemically treated timber, other than copper chrome arsenate (CCA).

3.2 NOISE LEVELS

General
Requirement: Install systems to operate within the noise level limits, as documented for the contract design and documented equipment performance.

3.3 STRUCTURE

General
Requirement: If provision of the works requires structural design, provide structures, installations and components as follows:

- Fixed accessways: To AS 1657 (2018).
- Structural design actions: To the AS/NZS 1170 series.

4 DESIGN

4.1 DESIGN DEVELOPMENT

General
Requirement: Complete the design of the work, including development of the design beyond that documented.

Conflict with the documents: If it is believed that a conflict exists between statutory requirements and the documents, notify the contract administrator immediately and provide a recommendation to resolve the conflict.

Certification of the design
Requirement: Submit certification verifying conformance of the design to the documented and statutory requirements.

Safety in design
Requirement: Provide a design that allows for safe construction, operation and maintenance, and demolition in conformance with statutory requirements.

5 PRODUCTS AND MATERIALS

5.1 GENERAL

Consistency

General: For each material or product use the same source or manufacturer and provide consistent type, size, quality and appearance.

Low VOC emitting paints

Paint types: To the recommendations of AS/NZS 2311 (2017) Table 4.2.

Prohibited materials

General: Do not provide the following:

- Materials, exceeding the limits of those listed, in the Safe Work Australia *Hazardous Chemical Information System* (HCIS) Workplace exposure standards.
- Blowing agents:
  - . Materials that use chlorofluorocarbon (CFC) or hydrochlorofluorocarbon (HCFC) in the manufacturing process.
  - . A blowing agent with a global warming potential (GWP) ≥ 700.

5.2 PROPRIETARY ITEMS

Manufacturer's or supplier's recommendations

General: Provide manufactured items to the manufacturer's or supplier's recommendations.

Proprietary items/systems/assemblies: Assemble, install or fix to substrate to the manufacturer's or supplier's recommendations.

Project modifications: Advise of activities that supplement, or are contrary to the manufacturer's or supplier's recommendations.

Identification of proprietary items

Sealed containers: If items are supplied by the manufacturer in closed or sealed containers or packages, bring them to point of use in the original containers or packages.

Other items: Marked to show the following, as applicable:

- Manufacturer’s identification.
- Brand name.
- Product type.
- Quantity.
- Reference code and batch number.
- Date of manufacture.

5.3 SUBSTITUTIONS

General

Identified proprietary items: Identification of a proprietary item does not necessarily imply exclusive preference for the identified item, but indicates the necessary properties of the item.

Alternatives: If alternatives to the documented products, methods or systems are proposed, submit sufficient information to permit evaluation of the proposed alternatives, including the following:

- Product, method or system identification.
- Product data sheets.
- Manufacturer's contact details.
- Detailed comparison between the properties of the documented product and proposed substitution.
- Details of manufacturer and/or installer warranty.
- Statement of NCC compliance, if applicable.
- Evidence of conformity to a cited standard or code of practice.
- Evidence that the performance is at least equal to that specified.
- Samples.
- Essential technical information, in English.
- Comparison between the products in relation to assembly method, finishes, installation methods and any protection/packaging.

- Reasons for the proposed substitutions.
- Statement of the extent of revisions to the contract documents.
- Statement of the extent of revisions to the construction program.
- Statement of cost implications including costs outside the contract.
- Statement of consequent alterations to other parts of the works.
- Statement of consequent maintenance conditions of warranty.

Availability: If the documented products or systems are unavailable within the time constraints of the construction program, submit evidence.

Criteria: If the substitution is for any reason other than unavailability, submit evidence that the substitution:

- Is of net enhanced value to the principal.
- Is consistent with the contract documents and is as effective as the identified item, detail or method.

5.4 SAMPLES AND PROTOTYPES

General

Incorporation of samples: Only incorporate samples that have been endorsed for inclusion in the works. Do not incorporate other samples.

Retention of samples: Keep endorsed samples in good condition on site, until the date for practical completion.

Unincorporated samples: Remove on completion.

5.5 SHOP DRAWINGS

General

Standard: To AS 1100.101 (1992), AS 1100.201 (1992), AS 1100.301 (2008), AS 1100.401 (1984) and AS/NZS 1100.501 (2002) as applicable.

Documentation: Include dimensioned drawings showing details of the fabrication and installation of structural elements, building components, services and equipment, including relationship to building structure and other services, cable type and size, and marking details.

Diagrammatic layouts: Coordinate work shown diagrammatically in the contract documents, and prepare dimensioned set-out drawings.

Services coordination: Coordinate with other building and service elements. Show adjusted positions on the shop drawings.

Space requirements: Check space and access for maintenance requirements of equipment and services indicated diagrammatically in the contract documents.

Commissioning requirements: Show provisions for testing and commissioning on the drawings.

Access for maintenance: Show space and provisions for access for maintenance.

Building work drawings for building services: On dimensioned drawings show the following:

- Access doors and panels.
- Conduits to be cast in slabs.
- Holding down bolts and other anchorage and/or fixings required complete with loads to be imposed on the structure during installation and operation.
- Openings, penetrations and block-outs.
- Sleeves.
- Plinths, kerbs and bases.
- Required external openings.

Record drawings: Amend all documented shop drawings to include changes made during the progress of the work and up to the end of the defects liability period.

6 ANCILLARY BUILDING WORK

6.1 WALL CHASING

Holes and chases

General: If holes and chases are required in masonry walls, make sure structural integrity of the wall is maintained. Do not chase walls with a fire-resistance level or an acoustic rating.

Parallel chases or recesses on opposite faces of a wall: Not closer than 600 mm to each other.

Chasing blockwork: Only chase core-filled hollow blocks or solid blocks that are not documented as structural.

Concrete blockwork chasing table

Block thickness (mm)	Maximum depth of chase (mm)
190	35
140	25
90	20

6.2 FIXING

General

Suitability: If equipment is not suitable for fixing to non-structural building elements, fix directly to structure and trim around penetrations in non-structural elements.

Fasteners

General: Use proprietary fasteners capable of transmitting the loads imposed, and sufficient for the rigidity of the assembly.

6.3 BUILDING PENETRATIONS

Penetrations

Requirement: Maintain the required structural integrity, fire performance, waterproofing performance and other properties when penetrating or fixing to the following:

- Structural building elements including external walls, fire walls, fire doors and access panels, other tested and rated assemblies or elements, floor slabs and beams.
- Membrane elements including damp-proof courses, waterproofing membranes and roof coverings. If penetrating membranes, provide a waterproof seal between the membrane and the penetrating component.

Sealing

Fire-resisting building elements: Seal penetrations with a system conforming to AS 4072.1 (2005).

Non fire-resisting building elements: Seal penetrations around conduits and sleeves. Seal around cables within sleeves. If the building element is acoustically rated, maintain the rating.

Sleeves

General: If piping, cables or conduits penetrate building elements, provide metal or PVC-U sleeves formed from pipe sections as follows:

- Movement: Arrange to permit normal pipe or conduit movement.
- Diameter (for non fire-resisting building elements): Sufficient to provide a ring shaped space around the pipe or pipe insulation of at least 12 mm.
- Ferrous surfaces: Prime paint.
- Sealing: Seal between pipes or conduits and sleeves to prevent the entry of vermin.
- Terminations:
  - . Cover plates fitted: Flush with the finished building surface.
  - . Fire-resisting and acoustic rated building elements: 50 mm beyond finished building surface.
  - . Floors draining to floor wastes: 50 mm above finished floor.
  - . Other locations: 5 mm beyond finished building surface.
  - . Termite management: To AS 3660.1 (2014).
- Thickness:
  - . Metal: 1 mm or greater.
  - . PVC-U: 3 mm or greater.

6.4 SUPPORT OF PLANT AND EQUIPMENT

Concrete plinths

General: Provide concrete plinths as documented and under all equipment located on concrete floor slabs as follows:

- Surround: Zinc (hot-dipped) coated steel, at least 75 mm high and 1.6 mm thick. Fix to the floor with masonry anchors. Fill with concrete.
- Height: 75 mm or greater, as documented.

- Reinforcement: Single layer of F62 fabric.
- Concrete: Grade N20.
- Finish: Steel float, flush with top edge of the surround.

Support of ground level plant and equipment

Ground level: Conform to the following:

- If the ground slope is 15° or more, or the area of the plant and equipment is extensive, obtain the advice of a professional engineer for the documentation of a suitable slab or platform.
- In all other cases, provide proprietary plastic or concrete supports installed with falls that achieve a raised, impervious and water shedding bearing surface.

Balustrades: If balustrades or screening are required, obtain the advice of a registered architect.

Support of plant and equipment mounted on roofs or elevated platforms

Platforms: If a platform is required, or the area of the plant and equipment mounted on roofs or elevated platforms is extensive, obtain the advice of a professional engineer for the documentation of a suitable platform.

Balustrades: If balustrades or screening are required, obtain the advice of a registered architect.

Roof level support: If any of the following apply to roof level support, obtain the advice of a professional engineer:

- The total load from any unit of plant or equipment exceeds 500 kg.
- The load from a unit of plant or equipment to any single support point exceeds 100 kg.
- The average loading of plant and equipment over the area extending 1 m on all sides beyond the plant and equipment exceeds 25 kg/m².

7 BUILDING SERVICES

7.1 SERVICES CONNECTIONS

Connections

General: Connect to utility service provider services or service points. Excavate to locate and expose connection points. Reinstate the surfaces and facilities that have been disturbed.

Utility service provider requirements

General: If the utility service provider elects to perform or supply part of the works, make the necessary arrangements. Install equipment supplied, but not installed, by the utility service provider.

7.2 SERVICES INSTALLATION

General

Installation: Install equipment and services as follows:

- Plumb and securely fixed.
- Allow for movement in both structure and services.
- Arrange services running together, parallel to each other and adjacent building elements.

Concealment: Conceal all cables, ducts, trays and pipes except where installed in plant spaces, ceiling spaces and riser cupboards or documented to be exposed. If alternative routes are available, do not locate on external walls.

Lifting: Provide heavy items of equipment with permanent fixtures for lifting to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Suspended ground floors: Keep all parts of services suspended under ground floors at least 150 mm clear of the ground surface. Make sure services do not impede access.

Dissimilar metals

Jointing: Join dissimilar metals with fittings of electrolytically compatible material.

Temporary capping

Pipe ends: During construction, protect open ends of pipe with metal or plastic covers or caps.

Piping

General: Install piping in straight lines at uniform grades without sags. Arrange to prevent air locks. Provide sufficient unions, flanges and isolating valves to allow removal of piping and fittings for maintenance or replacement of plant.

Spacing: Provide at least 25 mm clear between pipes and between pipes and building elements, additional to insulation.

Changes of direction: Provide as follows:

- If practicable, long radius elbows or bends and sets, and swept branch connections.

- If pipes are led up or along walls and then through to fixtures, provide elbows or short radius bends.
- Do not provide mitred fittings.

Vibration: Arrange and support piping to prevent vibration whilst permitting necessary movement. Minimise the number of joints.

Embedded pipes: Do not embed pipes that operate under pressure in concrete or surfacing material.

Valve groupings: If possible, locate valves in groups.

Pressure testing precautions: Isolate items not rated for the test pressure. Restrain pipes and equipment to prevent movement during pressure testing.

Support and structure

Requirement: Provide incidental supports and structures to suit the services.

Pipe support systems

Standard: To AS 4041 (2006) clause 3.28.

General: Provide hangers, brackets, saddles, clips, and support system components to resist live and dead loads and to control pipe movement caused by thermal and water pressure effects. Incorporate provisions for adjustment of spacing, alignment, grading and load distribution. Support pipework from associated equipment or building structure. Support valves, strainers and major line fittings so that no load is placed on connected piping or transmitted to it during operation and maintenance.

Fixings: Provide fixings to the associated equipment or building structure designed to withstand the loads imposed by the pipe supports.

Channel section supports: Proprietary channel section with clamps and hangers sized to match external diameter of pipe being supported. Provide all components from the same manufacturer.

Channel and fixing material: Metallic-coated steel or as documented.

Vertical pipes: Provide anchors and guides to maintain long pipes in position, and supports designed for the mass of the pipe and its contents.

Saddles: Do not use saddle type supports for pipes larger than DN 20.

Dissimilar metals: If pipe and support materials are dissimilar, provide industrial grade electrically non-conductive material securely bonded to the pipe to separate them. Provide fasteners of electrolytically compatible material.

Fixing to masonry and concrete: Provide metallic-coated steel or non-ferrous metal bolts or screws into chemical or expanding metal masonry anchors.

Uninsulated pipes: Clamp piping supports directly to pipes. Provide electrical isolation of dissimilar metals.

Insulated pipes:

- Spacers: Provide spacers at least as thick as the insulation between piping supports and pipes. Extend either side of the support by at least 20 mm.
- Spacer material: Rigid insulation material of sufficient strength to support the piping and suitable for the temperature application.
- Vapour barriers: For cold pipes, apply aluminium foil tape over the circumference of the spacer to form a vapour barrier. Fit to spacer before installation of the bracket on the pipe.
- Metal sheathing: If metal sheathing is documented, provide a band of the documented sheathing materials between the aluminium foil tape and the support for the full width of the spacer.

Hanger sizes: Conform to the following:

- Gas installations: To AS/NZS 5601.1 (2022) Table 5.8.3.
- Other pipes: Provide hangers sized to the manufacturer’s recommendations to suit operating conditions and regulatory requirements including the loads due to valves and other attached components, pipe material, pipe contents and temperature and seismic loads.

Support spacing: Provide supports at no greater spacing than the following:

- Cold and heated water: To AS/NZS 3500.1 (2021) Table 5.7.4.
- Sanitary plumbing: To AS/NZS 3500.2 (2021) Table 10.2.1.
- Stormwater: To AS/NZS 3500.2 (2021) clause 4.9.
- Fuel gas: To AS/NZS 5601.1 (2022) Table 5.8.2.
- Fire sprinklers and combined wet suppression systems: To AS 2118.9 (1995) Table 2.6.1.
- Fire hydrants:
  . Metal piping: To AS 2419.1 (2021) clause 10.6.

  . Plastic piping: To AS/NZS 3500.1 (2021).
- Gaseous fire suppression systems:
  . General gaseous fire suppression systems: To AS 4214 (2018) clause 6.3.4.
  . Carbon dioxide fire suppression systems: To AS 6183 (2011) clause 6.3.4.
- Medical gases: To AS 2896 (2021) Table 4.1.
- Refrigerant: To AS/NZS 5149.2 (2016) Tables 5 and 6.
- Other ferrous pipes under pressure: To AS 4041 (2006) Table 3.28.2.
- Other copper pipes: To AS 4809 (2017) Table 6.2.
- ABS pipes: To AS/NZS 3690 (2009) Table 6.2.
- PVC pipes: To AS/NZS 2032 (2006) Table 6.3.
- PE pipes: To AS/NZS 2033 (2008) Table 6.1.
- Other non-ferrous pipe carrying liquids: To AS/NZS 3500.1 (2021) Table 5.7.4.
- Other pipes carrying air or gases: To AS/NZS 5601.1 (2022) Table 5.8.2.
- Proprietary grooved piping systems: To the manufacturer's recommendations.

Additional supports: Provide additional supports as follows:
- Proprietary grooved piping systems: To the manufacturer's recommendations.
- Valves and other heavy pipe mounted components: Adjacent to the valve or component.
- Adjacent pipe mounted components requiring regular maintenance.
- At changes of direction and adjacent to wall or floor penetrations.
- Where required to anchor piping or control thermal or other movement.

Differential movement

General: If the geotechnical site investigation report predicts differential movements between buildings and the ground in which pipes or conduits are buried, provide control joints in the pipes or conduits, as follows:
- Arrangement: Arrange pipes and conduits to minimise the number of control joints.
- Magnitude: Accommodate the predicted movements.

7.3 PLANT AND EQUIPMENT

General

Location: Locate so failure of plant and equipment (including leaks) does not create a hazard for the building occupants and causes a minimum or no damage to the building, its finishes and contents including water sensitive equipment or finishes.

Safe tray and an overflow pipe: Provide to each tank, hot water heater and storage vessel.

7.4 ACCESS FOR MAINTENANCE

General

Requirement: Provide access for maintenance of all items requiring inspection, measurement, operation, adjustment, repair, replacement and other maintenance-related tasks.

Standards: Conform to the relevant requirements of AS 1657 (2018), AS 1892.1 (2018), AS 2865 (2009) and AS/NZS 3666.1 (2011).

Work Health and Safety: Conform to the requirements of the applicable Work Health and Safety regulations.

Access safety systems: Provide access safety systems to *0193 Building access safety systems.*

Refrigerated or cooling plant: If the space is a refrigerated or cooling chamber inside a duct, air handling plant or similar, provided with an access door or personnel access panel and of sufficient size for a person to enter, provide the following to BCA (2022) G1D3:
- An access door.
- Internal lighting with external indicator lamp.
- An alarm.

Protection from injury: Protect personnel from injury caused by contact with objects including those that are sharp, hot or protrude at low level.

Plant room flooring surfaces: R10 Slip resistance classification to AS 4586 (2013).

Trip hazards: Do not run small services including drains and conduits across floors where they may be a trip hazard.

Manufacturer's standard equipment: If necessary, modify manufacturer’s standard equipment to provide the plant access documented.

Clearances

Minimum clearances for access: Conform to the following:

- Vertical clearance: ≥ 2100 mm, vertically above horizontal floors, ground and platforms.
- Horizontal clearance: Preferably ≥ 750 mm clear, but in no case less than 600 mm between equipment or between equipment and building features including walls.
- If tools are required to operate, adjust or remove equipment, provide sufficient space so the tools can be used in their normal manner and without requiring the user to employ undue or awkward force.
- Hinged or removable components: To the manufacturer's recommendations.
- Within plant items: Conform to the preceding requirements, and not less than the clearances recommended in BS 8313 (1997).

Elevated services other than in occupied areas

Access classifications:

- Access class A: Readily accessible. Provide clear and immediate access to and around plant items. If plant or equipment is located more than 2.0 m above the ground, floor or platform, provide a platform with handrails accessible by a stair, all to AS 1657 (2018).
- Access class B: If the plant item requiring access is located more than 2.0 m above the ground, floor or platform, provide a platform with handrails accessible by a non-vertical ladder, all to AS 1657 (2018).
- Access class C: Locate plant so temporary means of access conforming to Work Health and Safety regulations can be provided.

Temporary means of access: Make sure there is adequate provision in place, which is safe and effective.

Areas in which access is restricted to authorised maintenance personnel: Provide access as follows:

- Instruments, gauges and indicators (including warning and indicating lights) requiring inspection at any frequency: Readily accessible.
- Access required monthly or more frequently: Access class A.
- Access required between monthly and six monthly: Access class A or B.
- Access required less frequently than six monthly: Access class A, B or C.

Other areas: Provide access as follows:

- Locate to minimise inconvenience and disruption to building occupants or damage to the building structure or finishes.
- In suspended ceilings, locate items of equipment that require inspection and/or maintenance above tiled parts. If not possible, provide access panels where located above set plaster or other inaccessible ceilings. Arrange services and plant locations to reduce the number of access panels. Coordinate with other trades to use common access panels where feasible.
- Do not locate equipment requiring access above partitions.
- Instruments, gauges and other items requiring inspection at any frequency: Readily accessible.
- Labelling: If equipment is concealed in ceilings, provide marking to **MARKING AND LABELLING**, **Equipment concealed in ceilings**.

Facilities for equipment removal and replacement

Requirement: Provide facilities to permit removal from the building and replacement of plant and equipment, including space large enough to accommodate it and any required lifting and/or transportation equipment. Arrange plant so large and/or heavy items can be moved with the minimum changes of direction.

Removal of components: Allow sufficient space for removal and replacement of equipment components including air filters, tubes of shell and tube heat exchangers, removable heat exchanger bundles, coils and fan shafts. Provide access panels or doors large enough to permit the safe removal and replacement of components within air handling units.

Facilities for access

Equipment behind hinged doors: Provide doors opening at least 150°.

Equipment behind removable panels: Provide panels with quick release fasteners or captive metal thread screws.

Removable panels: Provide handles to permit easy and safe removal and replacement.

Insulated plant and services: If insulation must be removed to access plant and services for maintenance, arrange it to allow for removal and replacement without damage.

Piping

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- Provide access and clearance at fittings that require maintenance, inspection or servicing, including control valves and joints intended to permit pipe removal.
- Arrange piping so it does not interfere with the removal or servicing of associated equipment or valves or block access or ventilation openings.
- Preferably run piping, conduits, cable trays and ducts at high level and drop vertically to equipment.

Electrical equipment and controls

Electrical equipment: Provide clearances and access space to AS/NZS 3000 (2018).

Switchboards and electrical control equipment: Locate near the main entrance to plant space and with switchboards visible from the plant being operated.

Control panels: Locate near and visible from the plant being controlled.

7.5 VIBRATION SUPPRESSION

General

Requirement: Minimise the transmission of vibration from rotating or reciprocating equipment to other building elements.

Standard

Machinery noise and vibration: Vibration severity in Zone A to ISO 20816-1 (2016) and ISO 20816-3 (2022).

Speeds

General: If no maximum speed is prescribed, do not exceed 1500 r/min for direct driven equipment.

Connections

General: Provide flexible connections to rotating machinery and assemblies containing rotating machinery. Isolate pipes by incorporating sufficient flexibility into the pipework or by use of proprietary flexible pipe connections installed to prevent placing stress on pipes due to end reaction.

Inertia bases

General: If necessary to achieve the required level of vibration isolation, provide inertia bases having appropriate mass and to the following:

- Construction: Steel or steel-framed reinforced concrete with reinforcing bars welded between base sections. Position foundation bolts for equipment before pouring concrete.
- Supports: Support on vibration isolation mountings using height saving support brackets.

Vibration isolation mountings

General: Except for external equipment that is not connected to the structure of any building, support rotating or reciprocating equipment on mountings as follows:

- For static deflections < 15 mm: Single or double deflection neoprene in-shear mountings incorporating steel top and base plates and a tapped hole for bolting to equipment.
- For static deflections ≥ 15 mm: Spring mountings.

Selection: Provide mountings selected to achieve 95% isolation efficiency at the normal operating speeds of the equipment.

Installation: Set and adjust vibration isolation mounting supports to give clearance for free movement of the supports.

Spring mountings: Provide freestanding laterally stable springs as follows:

- Clearances: ≥ 12 mm between springs and other members such as bolts and housing.
- High frequency isolation: 5 mm neoprene acoustic isolation pads between base plate and support.
- Levelling: Provide bolts and lock nuts.
- Minimum travel to solid: ≥ 150% of the designated minimum static deflection.
- Ratio of mean coil diameter to compressed length at the designated minimum static deflection: ≥ 0.8:1.
- Snubbing: Snub the springs to prevent bounce at start-up.
- Vertical resilient limit stops: To prevent spring extension when unloaded, to serve as blocking during erection and which remain out of contact during normal operation.

7.6 FINISHES TO BUILDING SERVICES

General

Requirement: If exposed to view (including in plant rooms), paint building services and equipment.

Surfaces painted or finished off-site: Conform to *0183 Metals and prefinishes*.

Exceptions: Do not paint chromium or nickel plating, anodised aluminium, GRP, stainless steel, non-metallic flexible materials and normally lubricated machined surfaces. Surfaces with finishes applied off-site need not be re-painted on-site provided the corrosion resistance of the finish is not less than that of the respective finish documented.

Standard: Conform to the recommendations of AS/NZS 2311 (2017) Sections 3, 6 and 7 or AS 2312.1 (2014) Sections 6, 7 and 8, as applicable.

Inaccessible surfaces: If surfaces are inaccessible after installation, complete finish before installation.

Painting systems

New unpainted interior surfaces: To AS/NZS 2311 (2017) Table 5.1.

New unpainted exterior surfaces: To AS/NZS 2311 (2017) Table 5.2.

Paint application

Coats: Apply the first coat immediately after substrate preparation and before contamination of the substrate can occur. Make sure each coat of paint or clear finish is uniform in colour, gloss, thickness and texture and free of runs, sags, blisters or other discontinuities.

Combinations: Do not combine paints from different manufacturers in a paint system.

Protection: Remove fixtures before starting to paint and refix in position undamaged when painting is complete.

Underground metal piping

Requirement: Provide corrosion protection for the following:

- Underground ferrous piping.
- Underground non-ferrous metal piping in chemically aggressive soils and environments.

Corrosion protection: Select from the following:

- Cathodic protection: Sacrificial anodes or impressed current. Incorporate a facility for periodic testing. Conform to the recommendations of AS 2832.1 (2015).
- Continuous wrapping using proprietary petroleum taping material.
- Impermeable flexible plastic coating.
- Sealed polyethylene sleeve.

Aggressive soils: If metallic piping or components are installed in chemically aggressive soil, provide additional protection as follows:

- Material: Continuous polyethylene sleeve to ASTM D1248 (2016) with a minimum thickness of 0.25 mm.
- Installation: Wrap or sleeve pipes and components. Tape joints between sections of polyethylene and between polyethylene and piping.

Repairs to finishes

Requirement: Repair damaged finishes to restore their corrosion protection, appearance and service life.

Painting of pipe threads: After pipe installation and before other finishes or insulation are applied, paint exposed threads in metallic-coated steel pipe with zinc rich paint.

7.7 MARKING AND LABELLING

General

Requirement: Mark and label services and equipment for identification purposes as follows:

- Locations exposed to weather: Provide durable materials.
- Pipes, conduits and ducts: To AS 1345 (1995) throughout its length, including in concealed spaces.
- Cables: Label to indicate the origin and destination of the cable.

Consistency: Label and mark equipment using a consistent scheme across all services elements of the project.

Label samples and schedules

Requirement: For each item or type of item, prepare a schedule of marking and labelling, including the following:

- A description of the item or type of item for identification.
- The proposed text for marking or labelling.
- The proposed location of the marking and labelling.

Submission timing: Before marking or labelling.

Electrical accessories

Circuit identification: Label isolating switches and outlets to identify circuit origin.

Operable devices
Requirement: Mark to identify the following:
- Controls.
- Indicators, gauges, meters.
- Isolating switches.

Equipment concealed in ceilings
Location: Provide a label on the ceiling, to indicate the location of each concealed item requiring access for routine inspection, maintenance and/or operation and as follows:
- Tiled ceilings, locate the label on the ceiling grid closest to the concealed item access point.
- Flush lined ceilings, locate adjacent to closest access panel.

Concealed equipment: Label items including the following:
- Fan coil units and terminal equipment (e.g. VAV terminals).
- Fire and smoke dampers.
- Isolating valves not directly connected to items otherwise labelled.
- Motorised dampers.

Wall mounted equipment in occupied areas
Location: Provide labels on wall mounted items in occupied areas including the following:
- Services control switches.
- Temperature and humidity sensors.

Points lists
Automatic control points: Provide plasticised, fade-free points lists for each automatic control panel and include terminal numbers, point addresses, short and long descriptors in the lists. Store in a pocket on the door of the panel.

Pressure vessels
General: Mount manufacturer’s certificates in glazed frames on a wall next to the vessel.

Valves and pumps
General: Label to associate pumps with their starters and valves. Screw fix labels to body or attach label to valve handwheels with a key ring.

Underground services
Survey: Accurately record the routes of underground cables and pipes before backfilling. Include on the record drawings.

Records: Provide digital photographic records of underground cable and pipe routes before backfilling. Include in operation and maintenance manual.

Location marking: Accurately mark the location of underground cables and pipes with route markers consisting of a marker plate set flush in a concrete base, engraved to show the direction of the line and the name of the service.

Markers: Place markers at ground level at each joint, route junction, change of direction, termination and building entry point and in straight runs at intervals of not more than 100 m.

Marker bases: 200 mm diameter x 200 mm deep, minimum concrete.

Direction marking: Show the direction of the cable and pipe run by means of direction arrows on the marker plate. Indicate distance to the next marker.

Plates: Brass, aluminium or stainless steel with black filled engraved lettering, minimum size 75 x 75 x 1 mm thick.

Plate fixing: Waterproof adhesive and 4 brass or stainless steel countersunk screws.

Marker height: Set the marker plate flush with paved surfaces, and 25 mm above other surfaces.

Marker tape: Where electric bricks or covers are not provided over underground wiring, provide a 150 mm wide yellow or orange marker tape bearing the words WARNING – electric cable buried below, laid in the trench 150 mm below ground level.

Plastic pipe: Provide a detectable marker tape with trace wire to identify the route of buried piping. Terminate with 1000 mm coil in a readily accessible location. Tag to match the record drawings.

Labels and notices
Materials: Select from the following:
- Cast metal.
- For indoor applications only, engraved two-colour laminated plastic.

- Proprietary pre-printed self-adhesive flexible plastic labels with machine printed black lettering.
- Stainless steel or brass minimum 1 mm thick with black filled engraved lettering.

Emergency functions: To AS 1319 (1994).

Colours: Generally to AS 1345 (1995) as appropriate, otherwise black lettering on white background except as follows:

- Danger, warning labels: White lettering on red background.
- Main switch and caution labels: Red lettering on white background.

Edges: If labels exceed 1.5 mm thickness, radius or bevel the edges.

Labelling text and marking: To correspond to terminology and identifying number of the respective item as shown on the record drawings and documents and in operating and maintenance manuals.

Lettering heights:

- Danger, warning and caution notices: Minimum 10 mm for main heading, minimum 5 mm for remainder.
- Equipment labels within cabinets: Minimum 5 mm.
- Equipment nameplates: Minimum 40 mm.
- Identifying labels on outside of cabinets: Minimum 5 mm.
- Isolating switches: Minimum 5 mm.
- Switchboards, main assembly designation: Minimum 25 mm.
- Switchboards, outgoing functional units: Minimum 10 mm.
- Switchboards, sub assembly designations: Minimum 15 mm.
- Valves:
  . ≥ DN 65: Minimum 25 mm.
  . < DN 65: Minimum 10 mm.
- Self-adhesive flexible plastic labels:
  . Labels less than 2000 mm above floor: 5 mm.
  . Labels minimum 2000 mm above floor: 10 mm.
  . Other locations: Minimum 5 mm.

Label locations: Locate labels so they are easily seen and are either attached to, below or next to the item being marked.

Fixing: Fix labels securely using screws, rivets, proprietary self-adhesive labels or double-sided adhesive tape and as follows:

- If labels are mounted in extruded aluminium sections, use rivets or countersunk screws to fix the extrusions.
- Use aluminium or monel rivets for aluminium labels.

Vapour barriers: Do not penetrate vapour barriers.

8 COMPLETION

8.1 TOOLS AND SPARE PARTS

Spare parts

General: Provide spare parts listed as documented.

Replacement: Replace spare parts used during the maintenance period.

Tools and spare parts schedule

Submission timing: At least 8 weeks before the date for practical completion.

Requirement: Prepare a schedule of tools, portable instruments and spare parts necessary for maintenance of the installation. For each item state the recommended quantity and the manufacturer’s current price. Include the following in the prices:

- Checking receipt, marking and numbering in conformance with the spare parts schedule.
- Packaging and delivery to site.
- Painting, greasing and packing to prevent deterioration during storage.
- Referencing equipment schedules in the operation and maintenance manuals.
- Suitable means of identifying, storing and securing the tools and instruments. Include instructions for use.

8.2 TRAINING

General

Standard: To SA TS 5342 (2021).

Duration: Instruction to be available for the whole of the commissioning and running-in periods.

Format: Conduct training at agreed times, at system or equipment location. Also provide seminar instruction to cover all major components.

Operation and maintenance manuals: Use items and procedures listed in the final draft operation and maintenance manuals as the basis for instruction. Review contents in detail with the principal's staff.

Certification: Provide written certification of attendance and participation in training for each attendee. Provide register of certificates issued.

Demonstrators

General: Use only qualified manufacturer's representatives who are knowledgeable about the installations.

Operation

General: Explain and demonstrate to the principal's staff the purpose, function and operation of the installations.

Maintenance

General: Explain and demonstrate to the principal's staff the purpose, function and maintenance of the installations.

Seasonal operation

General: For equipment requiring seasonal operation, demonstrate during the appropriate season.

8.3 CLEANING

Final cleaning

General: Before the date for practical completion, clean throughout, including all exterior and interior surfaces except those totally and permanently concealed from view.

Labels: Remove all visible labels not required for maintenance.

Removal of material

General: Dispose of building waste material off site to the requirements of the relevant authorities.

8.4 WARRANTIES

General

Requirement: If a warranty is documented, name the principal as warrantee. Register with manufacturers as necessary. Retain copies delivered with components and equipment.

Approval of applicator or installer: If the warranty is conditional on the manufacturer's approval of the applicator or installer, submit the manufacturer's written approval of the installing company, and authorised personnel, with evidence of qualifications and experience in the specific use of the product, material or system.

Principal's responsibilities: Submit details of responsibilities of the principal required to keep warranties in force.

Warranty types

Manufacturer warranty: Warranty to cover manufacturing defects and defects with products and materials delivered to site.

Manufacturer and applicator / installer interlocking warranty: Interlocking warranty to cover manufacturing defects and defects with products and materials delivered to site, including their application or installation.

Suppliers warranty: Warranty to defects in materials delivered to site.

9 TESTING AND COMMISSIONING

9.1 TESTING - GENERALLY

Inspection and testing plan

Requirement: Provide inspection and testing plan consistent with the construction program including details of test stages and procedures.

Notice

Site tests: Give notice of the time and place of documented tests.

Inspection: Give sufficient notice for inspection to be made of the commissioning, testing and verification tests on completion of commissioning.

Attendance

General: Provide attendance at tests.

Suppliers: If necessary to carry out documented tests, arrange equipment suppliers to assist.

Testing authorities

Requirement: Have tests carried out by an Accredited Testing Laboratory, accredited for the documented test method, except for site tests or test methods that do not have an accredited testing laboratory.

Test equipment

Accuracy: Use testing equipment designed to test and/or measure system performance within the documented tolerances.

Calibration: Use only instruments that have current calibration certificates issued by an Accredited Testing Laboratory. Tag or label instruments with calibration date and calibration authority name. Provide copies of certification if requested.

Maximum period since last calibration: As recommended by the manufacturer but less than 12 months, except as documented.

Recalibration: If dropped or damaged, recalibrate instruments.

Testing equipment: Provide test equipment and tools to perform documented tests as follows:

- Special testing equipment: If documented, provide special equipment, tools and instruments required for testing or calibration.
- Other testing equipment: Provide standard testing equipment.

Testing procedures

Verification: Verify test procedures by:

- Manual testing.
- Monitoring performance and analysing results using the control system trend logs.
- A combination of the above methods.

Sampling: Sampling may be used subject to the following:

- Use a sampling strategy only for multiple identical pieces of non-life-safety or otherwise non-critical equipment.
- If at any point, more than one identical item has failed, stop testing, determine the cause, rectify and document changes made to remaining units, before continuing with functional testing of the remaining units.

Type tests

Type test reports: Required, as evidence of conformance of proprietary equipment.

Sound pressure level measurements

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- Correction for background noise: To AS/NZS 2107 (2016) Table B1.
- External: To AS 1055 (2018).
- Internal: To AS/NZS 2107 (2016).
- Measurement positions: If a test position is designated only by reference to a room or space, do not take measurements less than 1 m from the floor, ground or walls. For large equipment items including chillers, measure at 2 m and 7 m from the equipment item.
- Sound pressure level analysis: Measure the sound pressure level and the background sound pressure level over the full range of octave band centre frequencies from 31.5 Hz to 8 kHz at the designated positions.
- Sound pressure levels: Measure the A-weighted sound pressure levels and the A-weighted background sound pressure levels at the designated positions.

Test outcome

Requirement: Test as documented and achieve the following:

- Pass the documented Pass/Fail test, and/or
- Values that meet documented requirements, and/or
- Verification of manufacturer's claimed performance.

Failure of multiple items

Requirement: If 10% or 3, whichever is greater, of identical pieces (size does not constitute a difference) of equipment fail to perform as documented for any reason, treat all identical units as having failed. Submit notice of failure and conform to the following:

- Within one week of notification, examine all other identical units and record the results. Submit a report of the findings within two weeks of the original failure notice.
- Within two weeks of the original failure notification, submit a signed and dated explanation of the problem, including the cause of failure, the proposed solution, full equipment details and any other information. Do not exceed the documented requirements of the original installation with the proposed solution.

Rectification of failure under test

Requirement: If an item fails a documented test, rectify the cause of failure and repeat the test.

Submissions: If submission of test results is documented, submit results of both successful and unsuccessful tests.

Test reports

Requirement: Include the following:

- Documented performance criteria including, if documented, tolerances.
- Observations and results of tests and conformance or non-conformance with documented requirements.

Test validity period

Requirement: As documented or, if no validity period is documented, no older than 5 years.

Controls

General: Calibrate, set and adjust control instruments, control systems and safety controls.

Circuit protection

General: Confirm that circuit protective devices are sized and adjusted to protect installed circuits.

Certification

General: On satisfactory completion of the installation, testing and commissioning and before the date for practical completion, certify that each installation is operating correctly.

Integrated system tests

Requirement: Conduct integrated system tests as documented.

Tests: Provide the following:

- Test the integrated operation of the systems listed in each mode documented.
- Restoration of the systems to their pre-test condition on completion of the tests above.

Failure: If any of the systems fails to perform as documented, including return to normal operation, rectify the cause and repeat the integrated system test.

Deferred and seasonal tests

Deferred tests: If documented testing cannot be completed at the scheduled or documented time, the Superintendent may direct that they be deferred to a later time but as soon as possible after the scheduled or documented time.

Seasonal tests: If documented tests are dependent on specific weather conditions, they may be deferred to a time when weather conditions are close to the documented test conditions. Complete seasonal testing as soon as possible but no later than one month before the end of the defects liability period.

Functional tests

Function: Carry out functional and operational tests on each energised equipment item and circuit.

9.2 COMMISSIONING

Standard

Requirement: Conform to SA TS 5342 (2021).

Static completion

Requirement: Systems, components and building elements are statically complete when:

- Their construction and installation is complete and as documented, including completion of all systems, components and building elements on which they are dependent for commissioning.
- All pre-commissioning tests have been successfully completed.
- They are safe and ready for commissioning.
- All cleaning that may adversely affect commissioning is complete.
- They have been inspected and all outstanding remedial work that may adversely affect commissioning is complete.
- All spaces required for access for commissioning are safe to use and cleared of obstructions that may adversely affect commissioning.

Commissioning activities

Requirement: Provide the following to SA TS 5342 (2021):

- Manage the commissioning process.
- Establish and manage the completion process.
- Review design documents for commissionability. Submit a report including any recommended changes.
- Review documented commissioning requirements. Submit a report including any recommended changes.
- Review construction documents for commissionability. Submit a report including any recommended changes.
- Develop, review and update the commissioning plan and commissioning program.
- Develop, review and update commissioning methodologies.
- Develop, review and update commissioning procedures.
- Report on interdependencies between trades that may affect commissioning.
- Develop, review and update procedures for initial start-up of systems.
- Develop, review and update integrated system test procedures.
- Carry out pre-commissioning activities. Record results and submit pre-commissioning records.
- Conduct commissioning activities to the commissioning methodologies and procedures. Record and submit commissioning records.
- Facilitate and conduct integrated system tests and demonstrations. Record and submit integrated system test records.
- Conduct documented demonstrations of completion of commissioning.
- Report on the progress of commissioning work.
- Report on conformance to the commissioning plan and program.
- Report on commissioning defects and issues and progress on their resolution.
- Develop, review and update commissioning report.
- Develop, review and update training materials, conduct training sessions to **TRAINING**.
- Develop, review and update operation and maintenance manuals to **OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**.
- Manage and report deferred and seasonal testing activities to **TESTING - GENERALLY**.
- Management and reporting of building tuning process.
- Periodically review performance data.

Verification of commissioning

Requirement: On completion of commissioning of the equipment or system, provide additional tests to verify that it is fully commissioned and operating to documented requirements.

10 PROJECT RECORDS

10.1 TACTICAL FIRE DRAWINGS

General

Requirement: Provide sets of colour coded tactical fire drawings, showing all items and systems relevant in a fire to BCA (2022) Spec 19.

Scale: 1:200 or larger if required to be easily read under emergency conditions.

Coordination: Agree the format, colour coding and contents of the tactical fire plans with the Local Fire Authority before beginning documentation.

Location: Provide one set of the laminated drawings fixed to the wall

Loose set: Provide a second set of identical drawings.

Operation and maintenance manuals: Provide a set of colour coded tactical fire drawings in each copy of the operating and maintenance manual.

Inclusions

Requirement: Include the following on the tactical fire drawings:

- Legend sheet at front of set.
- Colour coding key.
- Building: As follows:
  . Floor plans.

  . Pressurised and non-pressurised fire isolated stairs and passages.
  . Smoke and fire compartments.
  . Special risk areas.
- Fire services: As follows:
  . Automatic fire detection systems.
  . Automatic suppression systems including gas flooding systems.
  . Communications including warden intercommunication points.
  . Fire control room.
  . Fire equipment including booster connections.
  . Fire hydrants, hose reels, portable fire extinguishers.
  . Fire detection control and indicating equipment (FDCIE).
  . Fire service lifts.
  . Fire telephone and control panel.
  . Hydrant and sprinkler pumps.
  . Hydrant/hose reels.
  . Sprinkler and hydrant, suction and booster connections.
  . Sprinkler control valves.
- Electrical services: As follows:
  . Emergency power supplies.
  . Essential services switchboards.
  . Evacuation warning panel.
  . Stand-by power plant.
  . Substations/transformers.
  . Switchboards, main switchroom.
- Mechanical ventilation and air handling equipment: As follows:
  . Air intakes, fans, ducts, shafts.
  . Conditioners and mixing boxes.
  . Fire dampers.
  . General exhaust air fans, ducts, shafts, discharges.
  . Smoke dampers.
  . Smoke fans including exhaust fans, zone and stair pressurisation fans.
  . Stair pressurisation systems.
  . Supply air system.
- Mechanical ventilation and air handling equipment operation: As follows:
  . Statement of normal condition.
  . Condition upon fire alarm.
  . Manual controls available.
- Hydraulic services: As follows:
  . Gas meters.
  . Gas supply control.
  . Incoming water supplies and valves for the sprinkler, hydrant and fire hose reel systems.
  . Water tank.

10.2 RECORD DRAWINGS

General

Requirement: Prepare record drawings showing the following:

- Installed locations of building elements, services, plant and equipment.
- Off-the-grid dimensions and depth if applicable.
- Any provisions for the future.

Recording, format and submission

Requirement: Record changes made during the progress of the works on a set of drawings kept on site for that specific purpose.

Drawing layout: Use the same borders and title block as the contract drawings.

Quantity and format: Conform to **SUBMISSIONS**.

Endorsement: Sign and date all record drawings.

Accuracy: If errors in, or omissions from, the record drawings are found, amend the drawings and re-issue in the quantity and format documented for **SUBMISSIONS**.

Date for submission: Not later than 2 weeks after the date for practical completion.

Services record drawings

General: To **RECORD DRAWINGS**, **General** and **Recording, format and submission** and the following:

- Extensions and/or changes to existing: If a drawing shows extensions and/or alterations to existing installations, include sufficient detail of the existing installation to make the drawing comprehensible without reference to drawings of the original installation.
- Detention: If on-site detention tanks or pondage are provided, include the volume required on the drawing and the permitted flow rate to the connected system.
- Domestic cold water or fire mains: Show the pressure available at the initial connection point and the pressure available at the most disadvantaged location on each major section of the works.
- Stormwater: If storm water pipes are shown, include the pipe size and pipe grade together with the maximum acceptable flow and the actual design flow.

Diagrams: Provide diagrammatic drawings of each system including the following:

- Controls.
- Piping including all valves and valve identification tags.
- Principal items of equipment.
- Single line wiring diagrams.
- Acoustic and thermal insulation.
- Access provisions and space allowances.
- Fasteners.
- Fixtures.
- Switchgear and control gear assembly circuit schedules including electrical service characteristics, controls and communications.
- Charts of valve tag numbers, with location and function of each valve, keyed to flow and control diagrams.

Subsurface services: Record information on underground or submerged services to the documented quality level, conforming to AS 5488.1 (2022).

10.3 BASELINE DATA

General

Requirement: Provide baseline data to permit routine service of fire protection systems and equipment to AS 1668.1 (2015), AS 1670.1 (2018), AS 1851 (2012) and AS/NZS 2293.1 (2018). Include baseline data for the following:

- Active fire and smoke systems including automatic fire sprinkler systems, fire pumpsets, fire hydrant systems and water storage tanks for fire protection systems.
- Fire detection and alarm systems.
- EWIS, exit signs and emergency lighting.
- Stand-by generator sets and batteries.
- Lay flat fire hose, fire hose reels, portable and wheeled fire extinguishers and fire blankets.
- Passive fire and smoke systems including vertical and horizontal fire and smoke elements such as:
  - . Walls.
  - . Floors.
  - . Ceilings.
  - . Access panels and hatches.
  - . Structural fire-resistant elements - beams, columns, girders, trusses.

. Fire-resisting doorsets - hinged, pivoted and horizontal sliding.
. Smoke doors - hinged and pivoted.
. Fire shutters.
. Fire-resisting glazing.
. Ducts.
. Dampers.

- Fire and smoke control features of mechanical services.
- Emergency planning in facilities.

Format: Provide baseline data in a format that facilitates the carrying out and recording of routine service tasks including drawings showing the extent and location of items to be serviced, schedules of items and unique identification of each item.

10.4 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

General

Standard: To SA TS 5342 (2021).

Authors and compilers: Personnel experienced in the maintenance and operation of equipment and systems installed, and with editorial ability.

Referenced documents: If referenced documents or worksections require submissions of manuals, include corresponding material in the operation and maintenance manuals.

Structure of manuals: [complete/delete]

Subdivision: By installation or system, depending on project size.

Revisions: Amend operation and maintenance manuals to include changes made to the installation during the construction and maintenance.

Contents of manual

Table of contents: Include a table of contents in each volume. Title to match cover.

Table of amendments: Include a table of amendments.

Directory: Include names, addresses, email addresses and telephone and facsimile numbers of principal consultant, subconsultants, contractor, subcontractors and names of responsible parties.

Record drawings: Include complete set of record drawings, full size.

Drawings and technical data: Include as necessary for the efficient operation and maintenance of the installation.

Installation description: Include a general description of the installation.

Systems descriptions and performance: Include a technical description of the systems installed including the basis of design, the interrelation with other systems and the building and mode of operation, presented in a clear and concise format readily understandable by the principal's staff. Identify function, normal operating characteristics, safety features and limiting conditions.

Baseline data: Include the baseline data to **BASELINE DATA**.

Commissioning records: Include commissioning records to SA TS 5342 (2021). Link commissioning records to item codes on the record drawings.

Training material: Include materials used to provide training, to **TRAINING**, in a form that can be used to train others.

Fire systems and equipment: Include documentation to AS 1851 (2012), including the schedule of essential functionality and performance requirements.

Digital photographic records: Include records to **MARKING AND LABELLING, Underground services**.

Equipment: Include schedules with the following details for installed equipment:

- Item code for use on record and diagrammatic drawings, and spare parts schedule.
- Equipment name plate data including serial number, if any.
- Name and contact details of the manufacturer and supplier.
- Catalogue list number(s).
- Location.
- Function.
- Performance figures and capacity data.
- Date of manufacture.

- Manufacturer’s product data sheets including only relevant matter for the project. Mark each product data sheet to clearly identify specific products and component parts used in the installation, and data applicable to the installation.
- Additional information and commentary to illustrate relations of component parts.

Certificates:

- Certificates from authorities.
- Product certification.
- Test certificates for each service installation and all equipment.
- Warranties.

Trends: 7 day record of all trends at commissioning.

Operation procedures: Include for systems installed:

- Manufacturer's technical literature as appropriate.
- Safe starting up, running-in, operating and shutting down procedures. Include logical step-by-step instructions for each procedure.
- Control sequences and flow diagrams.
- Legend for colour-codes services.
- Schedules of fixed and variable equipment settings established during commissioning and maintenance.
- A list of special safety devices and their set points.
- Procedures for seasonal changeovers.
- Warnings to operators.
- Procedures for identifying and rectifying common faults.
- Recommendations for efficient plant operation.
- If the installation includes cooling towers, recommendations for water efficiency.
- Building tuning plan and procedure to **COMMISSIONING**, **Error! Reference source not found.**.

Building occupants' guide: Include a concise guide written and illustrated for building occupants with no technical background. Include the following:

- Security provisions.
- Safety and access.
- Environmental features, including energy and water efficiency and waste management.
- Occupant relevant information on design and operation.
- Information for occupants on environmental systems that rely partially or wholly on local controls for heating, lighting, cooling, and ventilation.
- Contact details for faults, maintenance and emergencies.

Maintenance procedures:

- Detailed recommendations for periodic maintenance and procedures, including schedule of maintenance work with frequency and manufacturers’ recommended tests.
- Manufacturer’s technical literature as appropriate. Register with manufacturer as necessary. Retain copies delivered with equipment.
- Safe trouble-shooting, disassembly, repair and reassembly, cleaning, alignment and adjustment, balancing and checking procedures. Provide logical step-by-step instructions for each procedure.
- Schedule of spares, recommended to be held on site, for those items subject to wear or deterioration and that may involve the principal in extended deliveries when replacements are required. Include complete nomenclature and model numbers, and local sources of supply.
- Schedule of normal consumable items, local sources of supply, and expected replacement intervals up to a running time of 40 000 hours. Include lubrication schedules for equipment.
- Instructions for use of tools and testing equipment.
- Troubleshooting procedures.
- Emergency procedures, including telephone numbers for emergency services, and procedures for fault finding.
- Safety data sheets (SDS).
- Instructions and schedules conforming to AS 1851 (2012), AS/NZS 3666.2 (2011), AS/NZS 3666.3 (2011) and AS/NZS 3666.4 (2011).

Maintenance records:

- Prototype routine service records conforming to AS 1851 (2012) prepared to include project specific details.
- Prototype periodic maintenance records and report to AS/NZS 3666.2 (2011), AS/NZS 3666.3 (2011) and AS/NZS 3666.4 (2011) as appropriate, prepared to include project specific details.
- Hard copies: Binders to match the manuals, containing loose leaf logbook pages designed for recording completion activities including operational and maintenance procedures, materials used, test results, comments for future maintenance actions and notes covering the condition of the installation. Include completed logbook pages recording the operational and maintenance activities performed up to the date for practical completion.
- Number of pages: The greater of 100 pages or enough pages for the maintenance period and a further 12 months.

Emergency information: For each type of emergency, including fire, flood, gas leak, water leak, power failure, water failure, system or subsystem failure, chemical release or spill, include the following:

- Emergency instructions.
- Emergency procedures including:
  . Instructions for stopping or isolating.
  . Shutdown procedures and sequences.
  . Instructions for actions outside the property.
  . Special operating instructions relevant to the emergency.
  . Contact details relevant to the emergency.

Emergency information manual

Form of emergency information: Provide one of the following:

- An index and coloured tabs identifying emergency information for each type of emergency within the Operation and maintenance manual.
- A separate Emergency manual containing copies of emergency information from the main Operation and maintenance manual.

Format – electronic copies

Scope: Provide the same material as documented for hardcopy in electronic format.

Delivery method: [complete/delete]

Quantity and format: Conform to **SUBMISSIONS**, **Error! Reference source not found.**.

Printing: Except for drawings required in **RECORD DRAWINGS** provide material that can be legibly printed on A4 size paper.

Format – hard copies

General: A4 size loose leaf, in commercial quality, 4 ring binders with hard covers, each indexed, divided and titled. Include the following features:

- Cover: Identify each binder with typed or printed title *OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL*, to spine. Identify title of project, volume number, volume subject matter, and date of issue.
- Dividers: Durable divider for each separate element, with typed description of system and major equipment components. Clearly print short titles under laminated plastic tabs.
- Drawings: Fold drawings to A4 size with title visible, insert in plastic sleeves (one per drawing) and accommodate them in the binders.
- Pagination: Number pages.
- Ring size: 50 mm maximum, with compressor bars.
- Text: Manufacturers' printed data, including associated diagrams, or typewritten, single-sided on bond paper, in clear concise English.

Number of copies: 3.

Date for submission

Draft submission: The earlier of the following:

- 4 weeks before the date for practical completion.
- Commencement of training.

Final submission: Within 2 weeks after practical completion.

0181 ADHESIVES, SEALANTS AND FASTENERS

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide adhesives, sealants and fasteners, as documented.

Performance

Requirements: Conform to the following:

- Fitness for purpose: Suitable for particular use, capable of transmitting imposed loads, sufficient to maintain the rigidity of the assembly, or integrity of the joint.
- Finished surface: That will not cause discolouration.
- Compatibility: Compatible with the products to which they are applied.
- Sealant replacement: Capable of safe removal without compromising the application of the replacement sealant for future refurbishment.
- Movement: If an adhered or sealed joint is subject to movement, select a system certified to accommodate the projected movement under the conditions of service.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 SUBMISSIONS

Products and materials

Adhesives and sealants: Submit product data sheets.

Samples

Requirement: Submit samples to PRODUCTS, **GENERAL**, **Samples**.

Warranties

Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Warranties**.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Samples

Visible joint sealants: Provide colour samples.

2.2 ADHESIVES

Standards

Gypsum plaster adhesive: To AS 2753 (2018).

High strength adhesive tape

General description: A foam of cross linked polyethylene or closed cell acrylic coated both sides with a high performance acrylic adhesive system, encased in release liners of paper or polyester.

Product classification: Select tape to suit substrate as follows:

- Firm high strength foam tapes: For high energy surfaces including most bare metals such as stainless steel and aluminium.
- Conformable high strength foam: For the following:
  - . Medium energy surfaces including many plastics, paints and bare metals.
  - . Lower energy surfaces including many plastics, most paints and powder coatings, and bare metals.

Thickness: Select the tape to make sure a mismatch between surfaces does not exceed half the tape thickness under the applied lamination pressure.

Total VOC limits
Requirement: Conform to the following maximum limits:
- General purpose adhesives: 50 g/L.
- Structural glazing adhesive, timber flooring and laminate adhesives: 100 g/L.

2.3 SEALANTS

Standards
General: To ISO 11600 (2002).

External masonry joints
General: Provide sealant and bond breaking materials that are non-staining to masonry. Do not use bituminous materials with absorbent masonry units.

Bond breaking backing:
- Bond breaking materials: Non-adhesive to sealant, or faced with a non-adhering material.
- Foamed materials: Closed cell or impregnated, not water-absorbing.

Lightweight building element joints
Joints subject to rapid changes of movement: Provide sealants that accommodate the movement of the contact materials.

Floor control joints
General: Provide trafficable sealants.

Bond breaking backing:
- Bond breaking materials: Non-adhesive to sealant, or faced with a non-adhering material.
- Foamed materials: Closed cell or impregnated, not water-absorbing.

Total VOC limits
Requirement: Conform to the following maximum limits:
- General purpose sealants: 50 g/L.
- Acoustic sealants, architectural sealants, waterproofing sealants: 250 g/L.
- Wood flooring and laminate sealant: 100 g/L.

2.4 FASTENERS

General
Masonry anchors: Proprietary expansion or bonded type anchors, as documented.

Plain washers: To AS 1237.1 (2002).
- Provide washers to the heads and nuts of bolts, and the nuts of coach bolts.

Plugs: Proprietary purpose-made plastic.

Stainless steel fasteners: To ASTM A276/A276M (2024).

Steel nails: To AS 2334 (1980).
- Length: At least 2.5 times the thickness of the member being secured, and at least 4 times the thickness if the member is plywood or building board less than 10 mm thick.

Unified hexagon bolts, screws and nuts: To AS/NZS 2465 (1999).

Fasteners in CCA treated timber: Epoxy coated or stainless steel.

Bolts
Coach bolts: To AS/NZS 1390 (1997).

Hexagon bolts Grades A and B: To AS 1110.1 (2015).

Hexagon bolts Grade C: To AS 1111.1 (2015).

Nuts
Hexagon chamfered thin nuts Grades A and B: To AS 1112.4 (2015).

Hexagon nuts Grade C: To AS 1112.3 (2015).

Hexagon nuts Style 1 Grades A and B: To AS 1112.1 (2015).

Hexagon nuts Style 2 Grades A and B: To AS 1112.2 (2015).

Screws
Coach screws: To AS/NZS 1393 (1996).

Hexagon screws Grades A and B: To AS 1110.2 (2015).

Hexagon screws Grade C: To AS 1111.2 (2015).

Hexagon socket screws: To AS 1420 (2008).

Self-drilling screws: To AS 3566.1 (2002).

Self-tapping screws:

- Cross-recessed countersunk (flat – common head style): To AS/NZS 4407 (2015).
- Cross-recessed pan: To AS/NZS 4406 (2015).
- Cross-recessed raised countersunk (oval): To AS/NZS 4408 (2015).
- Hexagon: To AS/NZS 4402 (2015).
- Hexagon flange: To AS/NZS 4410 (2015).
- Hexagon washer: To AS/NZS 4409 (2015).
- Slotted countersunk (flat – common head style): To AS/NZS 4404 (2015).
- Slotted pan: To AS/NZS 4403 (2015).
- Slotted raised countersunk (oval – common head style): To AS/NZS 4405 (2015).

Blind rivets

Description: Expanding end type with snap mandrel.

Type: Closed end for external application, open end for internal application.

End material:

- Aluminium base alloy for metallic-coated or prepainted steel.
- Stainless steel for stainless steel sheet.
- Copper for copper sheet.

Size:

- For sheet metal to sheet metal: 3 mm.
- For sheet metal to supports, brackets and rolled steel angles: 4.8 mm.

Corrosion resistance

Atmospheric corrosivity category: To *0171 General requirements*.

Steel products: Conform to the **Corrosion resistance table** or provide proprietary products with metallic and/or organic coatings of equivalent corrosion-resistance.

Corrosion resistance table

Atmospheric corrosivity category to AS 4312 (2019)	**Threaded fasteners and anchors**		**Powder actuated fasteners**
	Material	**Minimum local metallic coating thickness (µm)**	**Material**
C1 and C2	Electroplated zinc or Hot-dip galvanized	30	Stainless steel Type 316
C3	Hot-dip galvanized	45	Stainless steel Type 316
C4	Stainless steel Type 316	-	Stainless steel Type 316
Note: For categories C5, CX and T to the AS/NZS 2312 series, seek specialist advice.			

Finishes

Electroplating:

- Metric thread: To AS 1897 (2016).
- Imperial thread: To AS 4397 (2007).

Galvanizing:

- Threaded fasteners: To AS/NZS 1214 (2016).
- Other fasteners: To AS/NZS 4680 (2006).

Mild steel fasteners: Galvanize if:

- Embedded in masonry.

- In external timbers.
- Exposed to or in air spaces behind the external leaf of masonry walls.
- In contact with chemically treated timber other than CCA treated timber.

Epoxy coated: CCA treated timber.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 ADHESIVES

General

Requirement: Install to the manufacturer’s recommendations.

Preparation

Substrates: Conform to the following:

- Remove any deposit or finish that may impair adhesion.
- If framed or discontinuous, provide support members in full lengths without splicing.
- If solid or continuous, remove excessive projections.
- If previously painted, remove cracked or flaking paint and lightly sand the surface.

Contact adhesive

Precautions: Do not use contact adhesive if:

- A substrate is polystyrene foam.
- A PVC substrate may allow plasticiser migration.
- The adhesive solvent can discolour the finished surface.
- Dispersal of the adhesive solvent is impaired.

Two-way method: Immediately after application, press firmly to transfer adhesive and then pull both surfaces apart. Allow to tack off and then reposition and press firmly together. Tap areas in contact with a hammer and padded block.

One-way method: Immediately after application, bring substrates together and maintain maximum surface contact for 24 hours by clamps, nails or screws as appropriate. If highly stressed, employ permanent mechanical fasteners.

High strength adhesive tape

Preparation:

- Non-porous surfaces: Clean with surface cleaning solvents such as isopropyl alcohol/water, wash down and allow to dry.
- Porous surfaces: Prime the surface with a contact adhesive compatible with the tape adhesive system.

Application to copper, brass, plasticised vinyl and hydrophilic surfaces such as glass and ceramics in a high humidity environment: Conform to manufacturer's recommendations.

Applied lamination pressure: Make sure the tape experiences 100 kPa.

Application temperature: Generally above 10°C and to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Completion: Do not apply loads to the assembly for 72 hours at 21°C.

3.2 JOINT SEALING

General

Requirement: Install to the manufacturer’s recommendations.

Joint preparation

Cleaning: Cut flush joint surface protrusions and rectify if required. Mechanically clean joint surfaces free of any deposit or finish that may impair adhesion of the sealant. Immediately before sealant application, remove loose particles from the joint, using oil-free compressed air.

Bond breaking: Install bond breaking backing material.

Taping: Protect the surface on each side of the joint using 50 mm wide masking tape or equivalent means. On completion of sealant application, remove the tape and remove any stains or marks from adjacent surfaces.

Primer: Apply the recommended primer to the surfaces in contact with sealant materials.

Sealant joint proportions

General weatherproofing joints (width:depth):

- 1:1 for joint widths less than 12 mm.
- 2:1 for joint widths greater than 12 mm.

Sealant application
General: Apply the sealant to dry joint surfaces using a pneumatic applicator gun. Make sure the sealant completely fills the joint to the required depth, provides good contact with the full depth of the sides of the joint and traps no air in the joint. Do not apply the sealant outside the recommended working time for the material or the primer.

Weather conditions
Two pack polyurethanes: Do not apply the sealant if ambient conditions are outside the following:

- Temperature: Less than 5°C or greater than 40°C.
- Humidity: To the manufacturer's recommendations.

Joint finish
General: Force the sealant into the joint and finish with a smooth, slightly concave surface using a tool designed for the purpose.

Excess sealant: Remove from adjoining surfaces using cleaning material nominated by the sealant manufacturer.

Protection
General: Protect the joint from inclement weather during the setting or curing period of the material.

Rectification
General: Cut out and remove damaged portion of joint sealant and reinstall so repaired area is indistinguishable from undamaged portion.

3.3 FASTENERS

General
Requirement: Install to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Fastening to wood and steel
Timber substrates: To AS 1720.1 (2010) Section 4.

Self-drilling screws: To AS 3566.1 (2002) for timber and steel substrates.

Masonry anchors
Installation: To the manufacturer's recommendations.

0183B METALS AND PREFINISHES

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirements: Provide metal and prefinishes, as documented.

Performance

Requirement: Provide metals in sections of strength and stiffness suited to their required function, finish and method of fabrication.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 SUBMISSIONS

Samples

Requirement: Submit samples to PRODUCTS, **GENERAL**, **Samples**.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Samples

Requirement: Provide samples of the following:

- Stainless steel: One sample of every documented surface finish.
- Anodising: One sample of every colour and finishing option.

2.2 METALS

Stainless steel

Bars: To ASTM A276/A276M (2024).

Plate, sheet and strip: To ASTM A240/A240M (2023).

Welded pipe (plumbing applications): To AS 1769 (1975).

Welded pipe (round, square, rectangular): To ASTM A554 (2021).

3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

Metal separation

Incompatible sheet metals: Prevent direct contact between incompatible metals. Provide separation by one of the following:

- Apply an anti-corrosion, low moisture transmission coating such as alkyd zinc phosphate primer or aluminium pigmented bituminous paint to contact surfaces.
- Insert a concealed, non-conductive separation layer such as polyethylene film, adhesive tape, neoprene, nylon or bituminous felt.

Incompatible fixings: Do not use.

Incompatible service pipes: Install lagging or grommets. Do not use absorbent, fibrous or paper products.

Brazing

Lap-joints: Make sure brazed lap-joints have sufficient lap to provide a mechanically sound joint.

Butt joints: Do not use butt jointing for joints subject to load. If butt joints are used, do not rely on the filler metal fillet only.

Filler metal: To AS/NZS ISO 17672 (2023).

Soldering

Lap-joints: Provide a mechanically sound soldered joint with sufficient lap for roofing, guttering, metalwork.

Pipes: Make a leakproof soldered joint using joiners for copper pipes.

Solder: To AS 1834.1 (1991).

Welding

Aluminium: To AS/NZS 1665 (2004).

Stainless steel: To AS/NZS 1554.6 (2012).

Steel: To AS/NZS 1554.1 (2014).

Finishing

Visible joints: Finish visible joints made by welding, brazing or soldering using methods appropriate to the class of work (including grinding or buffing) before further treatment such as painting, galvanizing or electroplating. Make sure self-finished metals are without surface colour variations after jointing.

Preparation

General: Before applying decorative or protective prefinishes to metal components, complete welding, cutting, drilling and other fabrication, and prepare the surface using a suitable method.

Standard: To the AS 1627 series.

Priming steel surfaces: If site painting is documented to otherwise uncoated mild steel or similar surfaces, prime as follows:

- After fabrication and before delivery to the works.
- After installation, repair damaged priming and complete the coverage to unprimed surfaces.

3.2 FERROUS STEEL FINISHES

Metallic-coated steel

General: Steel coated with zinc or aluminium-zinc alloy as follows:

Electrogalvanized (zinc) coating on ferrous hollow and open sections: To AS 4750 (2003).

- Ferrous open sections by an in-line process: To AS/NZS 4791 (2006).
- Ferrous hollow sections by a continuous or specialised process: To AS/NZS 4792 (2006).
- Steel sheet and strip: To AS 1397 (2021).
- Steel wire: To AS/NZS 4534 (2006).

3.3 STAINLESS STEEL FINISHES

General

Requirement: Provide a surface finish to match the approved sample.

Pre-assembly

Bead blasted finish: Provide a uniform non-directional low reflective surface by bead blasting. Do not use sand, iron or carbon steel shot. Blast both sides of austenitic stainless steel to equalise induced stress.

Post-assembly pre-treatment

Heat discolouration: Remove by pickling to ASTM A380/A380M (2017).

Welds: Grind excess material, brush, and polish to match the pre-assembly finish.

Post-assembly finish

Electropolish finish: Provide an electro-chemical process to stainless steel Type 316.

Brushed electropolish finish: Conform to the following:

- Pre-assembly finish: No. 4 polished.
- Post-assembly finish: Provide an electro-chemical process to achieve a surface roughness R_a, no greater than 0.50 µm.

Mirror finish: Conform to the following:

- Pre-assembly finish: 2B cold-rolled finish.
- Post-assembly finish: Apply a polishing and buffing process to achieve a No. 8 mirror finish.

Completion

Cleaning: Clean and rinse to an acid free condition and allow to dry. Do not use carbon steel abrasives or materials containing chloride.

Protection: Secure packaging or strippable plastic sheet.

3.4 ELECTROPLATED FINISHES

Electroplated coatings

Chromium on metals: To AS 1192 (2004).

- Service condition number: At least 2.

Nickel on metals: To AS 1192 (2004).

- Service condition number: At least 2.

Zinc on iron or steel: To AS/NZS 1789 (2023).

3.5 ANODISED FINISHES

General

Standard: To AS 1231 (2000).

Thickness grade: To the recommendations of AS 1231 (2000) Appendix H.

3.6 PREPAINTED FINISHES

Air-drying enamel

Application: Spray or brush.

Finish: Full gloss.

General use:

- Primer: Two-pack epoxy primer to AS/NZS 3750.13 (1997).
- Top coats: 2 coats to AS 3730.6 (2006).

Oil resistant use:

- Primer: Two-pack epoxy primer to AS/NZS 3750.13 (1997).
- Top coats: 2 coats to AS/NZS 3750.22 (2008).

Equipment paint system

Description: Brush or spray application using paint as follows:

- Full gloss enamel finish coats, oil and petrol resistant: To AS/NZS 3750.22 (2008), two coats.
- Prime coat to metal surfaces generally: To AS/NZS 3750.19 (2008) or AS/NZS 3750.20 (2008).
- Prime coat to zinc-coated steel: To AS 3730.15 (2006) or AS/NZS 3750.16 (1998).
- Undercoat: To AS/NZS 3750.21 (2008).

Prepainted metal products

Standard: To AS/NZS 2728 (2013).

Product type: To AS/NZS 2728 (2013): Not lower than the type appropriate to the documented atmospheric corrosivity category.

Stoving enamel

Application: Spray or dip.

Two-pack liquid coating

Application: Spray.

Finish: Full gloss.

Primer: Two pack epoxy primer to AS/NZS 3750.13 (1997).

Topcoat:

- Internal use: Proprietary polyurethane or epoxy acrylic system.
- External use: Proprietary polyurethane system.

3.7 COMPLETION

Damage

Damaged prefinishes: Remove and replace items, including damage caused by unauthorised site cutting or drilling.

Repair

Anodising: Use sprayers or pens for minor scratches and mitre cuts as required.

Metallic-coated sheet: If repair is required to metallic-coated sheet or electrogalvanizing on inline galvanized steel products, clean the affected area and apply a two-pack organic primer to AS/NZS 3750.9 (2009).

Cleaning
General: On completion, clean all surfaces. Do not use abrasive cleaners.

0184 TERMITE MANAGEMENT

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General
Requirement: Provide termite management systems, as documented.

Performance
Requirement: Building protection from termite attack.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General
Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 STANDARD

General
Termite management systems: To AS 3660.1 (2014).

1.4 INTERPRETATION

Definitions
General: For the purposes of this worksection the definitions given in AS 3660.1 (2014) apply.

1.5 SUBMISSIONS

Certification
Installation: On completion, submit certificate to AS 3660.1 (2014) clause A3.

Operation and maintenance manuals
Requirement: Submit manuals to **COMPLETION**, **Operation and maintenance manuals**.

Products and materials
Manufacturer's data: Submit manufacturer’s data including the following:

- Product data sheet.
- Recommendations for installation or application.

Type tests: Submit results, as follows:

- Termite management systems to AS 3660.3 (2014).

Records
Chemical termite management systems: Submit report to **COMPLETION**, **Chemical termite management systems**.

Termite management system: Submit report to **Error! Reference source not found.**, **Error! Reference source not found.**.

Subcontractors
General: Submit names and contract details of proposed suppliers and installers.

Warranties
Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Error! Reference source not found.**.

1.6 INSPECTION

Notice
Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:

- Completed earthworks or substrate preparation before system application or installation.
- Completed termite management system before concealing.
- Termite management system at the end of the defects liability period.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PHYSICAL SYSTEMS

Termite caps, collars and sheeting
General: To AS 3660.1 (2014) Section 5.

Collars: To AS 3660.1 (2014) clauses 4.3.2.4.2 and 5.3.6.

Granular materials
Standard: To AS 3660.1 (2014) Section 6.

2.2 CHEMICAL SYSTEMS

General
Chemical systems are NOT to be used. A physical barrier system is to be used.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

Concrete slabs
Standard: To AS 3660.1 (2014) Section 4.

3.2 PHYSICAL SYSTEMS

Termite caps, collars and sheeting
General: To AS 3660.1 (2014) Section 5.

Collars: To AS 3660.1 (2014) clauses 4.3.2.4.2 and 5.3.6.

Granular materials
Standard: To AS 3660.1 (2014) Section 6.

3.3 CHEMICAL SYSTEMS

General
Standard: To AS 3660.1 (2014) Section 7.

3.4 COMPLETION

Chemical termite management systems
Requirement: Prepare a report including the following:

- Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
- Date and time of application.
- Location and extent of application.
- For each location:
  - . Moisture content of soil before application.
  - . Volume of undiluted termiticide used and dilution rate.
  - . Method of application.
  - . Rate of application.
- Water source for application.

Termite management system notice
Signage: Permanently fix a durable notice in a prominent location to BCA (2022) B1D4(i)(ii).

Cleaning
Requirement: Clean progressively and remove from the site waste building materials that could attract termites.

Operation and maintenance manuals
Requirement: For systems requiring post-construction monitoring, prepare a maintenance manual that includes the following:

- Inspection frequency.
- Instructions for inspection of termite activity and treatment effectiveness.
- Contact details of installers and manufacturer's authorised supplier of replacement components.
- Recommendations for reapplication, if required.

0185 TIMBER PRODUCTS, FINISHES AND TREATMENT

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide timber products with finishes and treatments, as documented.

Performance

Requirements:

- Appropriate for durability and fire-resistance.
- Appropriate surface finish.
- Appropriate certification for the finishing applications.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.
- *0671 Painting*.

1.3 STANDARDS

General

Sawn and milled products:

- Hardwood: To AS 2796.1 (1999).
- Softwood: To AS 4785.1 (2002).

Reconstituted wood based panels:

- Particleboard: To AS 1859.1 (2017).
- Particleboard flooring: To AS/NZS 1860.1 (2017).
- Dry process fibreboard: To AS/NZS 1859.2 (2017).
- Decorative overlaid wood panels: To AS/NZS 1859.3 (2017).
- Wet process fibreboard: To AS/NZS 1859.4 (2018).

Plywood:

- Structural: To AS/NZS 2269.0 (2012).
- Interior: To AS/NZS 2270 (2006).
- Exterior: To AS/NZS 2271 (2004).
- Marine: To AS/NZS 2272 (2006).

Glued laminated timber: To AS/NZS 1328.1 (1998).

Laminated veneer lumber: To AS/NZS 4357.0 (2022).

Timber grading methods:

- Stress graded: To the AS/NZS 1748 series.
- Visually graded F-grade: To AS 2082 (2007) or AS 2858 (2023).

1.4 INTERPRETATION

Abbreviations

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the following abbreviations apply:

- LVL: Laminated Veneer Lumber.

Definitions

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the definitions given in AS/NZS 4491 (1997) and the following apply:

- Dry process fibreboard: Panel material with a nominal thickness of 1.5 mm or greater, manufactured from lignocellulosic fibres (derived from wood or other materials) with application of heat and pressure, the bond of which

is derived from a synthetic adhesive added to the fibres and the panels are manufactured with a forming moisture content less than 20%.

- Particleboard: Panel material manufactured under pressure and heat from particles of wood (wood flakes, strands, chips, shavings, sawdust and similar) and/or lignocellulosic material in particle form (flax shives, hemp hurds, bagasse fragments, rice hulls, wheat straw and similar) with the addition of an adhesive.
- Wet process fibreboard: Panel material with a nominated thickness of 1.5 mm or greater, manufactured from lignocellulosic fibres (derived from wood or other materials) with application of heat and/or pressure, the bond of which is derived from the felting of the fibres and the panels are manufactured with a forming moisture content greater than 20%.

1.5 SUBMISSIONS

Products and materials

Chain of custody of forest products: Submit the following as evidence of conformity to **CERTIFICATION**, **Timber source certification**:

- Third party certification of supplier's chain of custody management system.
- Formal claim of chain of custody by supplier.

Preservative treatment of timber: Submit a certificate from an independent testing authority to AS/NZS 1604.1 (2021) clause 1.5.3.6. Include details of treatment and a copy of the charge sheet.

Tests: Submit moisture content test results.

Warranties

Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Warranties**.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Storage and handling

General: Deliver timber products to site in unbroken wrapping or containers and store so that the moisture content is not adversely affected.

Product identification

Preservative treated timber: Marking to AS/NZS 1604.1 (2021) clause 1.5.3 and including the following:

- A unique identifier for the treatment plant.
- A unique identifier for the preservative.
- Hazard class.

2.2 CERTIFICATION

Timber source certification

Requirement: Use timber products originating from sustainably managed forests.

Engineered timber product certification and identification

Branding: Brand timber products under the authority of a certification scheme applicable to the product. Locate the brand on faces or edges that will be concealed in the works.

2.3 FIRE-RESISTANCE

General

Structural timber: To AS/NZS 1720.4 (2019) or alternative conforming to NCC (2022) A5G3.

Bushfire-prone areas

Standard: To AS 3959 (2018).

2.4 DURABILITY

General

Requirement: Provide timbers with natural durability appropriate to the conditions of use, or preservative-treated timber of equivalent durability.

Natural durability class: To AS 5604 (2022).

Naturally termite-resistant timbers: To AS 3660.1 (2014) Appendix C.

Timber quality: Free of core wood (material within 50 mm of the tree's centre) and free of splits, checks, loose knots and cavities. Free of sapwood (lighter coloured wood found on the outer layer of the tree).

Lyctid susceptible timbers: To AS 5604 (2022). Do not provide untreated timbers containing lyctid susceptible sapwood.

Untreated sapwood: Do not use in applications requiring treated timber or natural durability.

Preservative treatment

Wood-based products: To AS/NZS 1604.1 (2021) or preservative treated products conforming to NCC (2022) A5G3.

Verification requirements: To AS/NZS 1604.2 (2021).

Test methods: To AS/NZS 1604.3 (2021).

Moisture content

Test: Methods as follows:

- Timber and glued laminated timber products: To AS/NZS 1080.1 (2012).
- Plywood and LVL: To AS/NZS 2098.1 (2006).
- Reconstituted wood-based products: To AS/NZS 4266.1 (2017).

Protection: Protect timber and timber products stored on site from moisture and weather. For milled, prefinished, prefabricated and similar elements that are to be protected in the final structure, provide temporary weather protection until the permanent covering is in place.

2.5 FINISHING

Production finish

Glued laminated timber: To AS/NZS 1328.1 (1998).

Hardwood: To AS 2796.1 (1999) Table B1.

Plywood: To AS/NZS 2269.0 (2012), AS/NZS 2270 (2006), AS/NZS 2271 (2004) and AS/NZS 2272 (2006).

Softwood: To AS 4785.1 (2002) Table B1.

Surface coating

Painting and staining: To *0671 Painting*.

Application: To the manufacturer's specification.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 JOINTS

General

Joints and connections: Use hot-dipped galvanized or stainless steel fasteners, composite bolts, nails or nailed metal connectors.

Timber-to-timber interfaces: To the manufacturer's recommendations and the following:

- Provide a seal coating of preservative treatment.
- Make sure the inside of bolt holes and the end grains of the timber are coated.

Water retention: Avoid details that may trap water including housing or birdsmouth joints.

Fasteners: To prevent chemical treatments reacting with fasteners, install to manufacturer's recommendations.

3.2 SHRINKAGE RESTRAINT

General

Requirement: If possible, use seasoned timber, particularly where timber elements are integrated with steel and/or concrete.

Moisture content: Maintain a timber moisture content near the anticipated in-service equilibrium moisture content.

Fasteners: Where possible, align fasteners along member axis.

Connections: Use connections that allow for movement without adversely affecting the performance of the connection.

Unseasoned timber: Provide as follows:

- Drill bolt holes 2 mm or 10% larger than the bolt diameter.
- Use species with similar shrinkage values to reduce movement and shrinkage.
- Provide adequate clearance between unseasoned timber framing, and interfacing structures and materials to allow for movement.

3.3 FINISHING

Ploughing

General: Back plough boards liable to warp (e.g. if exposed externally on one face). Make the width, depth and distribution of ploughs appropriate to the dimensions of the board and degree of exposure.

Painting

Edges: Chamfer edges of work to receive paint or similar coatings.

Priming: For woodwork to be painted, prime hidden surfaces before assembly.

0191 SUNDRY ITEMS

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General
Requirement: Provide sundry items, as documented.

Performance
Requirements: Installation as follows:

- Undamaged and free of surface defects or distortions.
- Correctly located and aligned, plumb, level and straight.
- Fixed firmly in position.
- Connected to the nominated service(s).

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General
Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 SUBMISSIONS

Certification
Sealant compatibility: Submit statements from all parties to the installation certifying the compatibility of sealants with items and substrates.

Operation and maintenance manuals
Requirement: Submit manual to **COMPLETION**, **Operation and maintenance manuals**.

Samples
Requirement: Submit samples to PRODUCTS, **GENERAL**, **Samples**.

Shop drawings
General: Submit shop drawings, to a scale that best describes the detail, showing the following:

- Details of fabrication and components.
- Details of fabrication involving other trades or components.
- Information necessary for site assembly.
- Proposals for the break-up of large items as required for delivery to the site.
- Proposed method of joining the modules of large items.
- Fixing locations and types.

Tests
Requirement: Submit completion test results.

Warranties
Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Warranties**.

1.4 INSPECTION

Notice
Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:

- Set-out of item locations before fixing.
- Completion of installation.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Storage and handling
General: Deliver, unload and store components and accessories in unbroken manufacturer's packaging.

Samples
Labelling: Label each sample, giving the brand and product name, manufacturer's code reference, date of manufacture and intended building location.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Substrates
General: Prepare the substrate to receive the item.

Protection
General: Protect existing work from damage during the installation and rectify any damage. Provide temporary coverings if required.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Accessories and trim
Requirement: Provide accessories and trim necessary to complete the installation.

3.3 COMPLETION

Cleaning
Requirement: Remove packaging. Clean the completed assembly and surrounds. Wipe down appliances and fittings with a damp, soft, clean cloth.

Operation and maintenance manuals
Requirement: Prepare a maintenance manual and, if required, an operation manual with the technical specification and manufacturer's recommendations for the item to be installed.

0202 DEMOLITION (INTERIOR AND ALTERATIONS)

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Carry out demolition, as documented.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 STANDARDS

General

Demolition: To AS 2601 (2001).

1.4 INTERPRETATION

Definitions

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the following definitions apply:

- Demolition: The complete or partial removal of a building or structure, by pre-planned and controlled methods or procedures.
- Dilapidation record: The photographic or video, and written record of the condition of the portion of the existing building retained, adjacent buildings, and other relevant structures or facilities, before the start of demolition work.
- Recover: The disconnection and removal of an item in a manner to allow re-installation.

1.5 SUBMISSIONS

Authority approvals

Evidence of compliance: Before starting demolition, submit evidence of the following:

- Requirements of authorities relating to the work under the contract have been obtained.
- A permit to demolish from the appropriate authority.
- A scaffold permit from the appropriate authority if scaffolding is proposed to be used.
- Certification that each person having access to the construction site has completed site-specific WHS induction training.
- Precautions necessary for protection of persons and property have been taken and suitable protective and safety devices have been provided to the approval of the relevant authority.
- Certificate from the relevant authority confirming treatment for any rodent infestation has been carried out.
- Fees and other costs have been paid.

Execution details

Requirement: Submit the following, as documented:

- Hazardous Substances Management Plan, including laboratory analysis of hazardous substances.
- Investigation and work plan.
- Safe Work Method Statement.

Off-site disposal locations: Submit details of the proposed locations for the disposal of material required to be removed from the site, and evidence of conformance with the requirements of relevant authorities.

Recycling: Submit details of the proposed recycling facility, and a certificate as evidence of correct disposal of recycled materials.

Records

Dilapidation record:

- Before demolition: Submit to each owner of each adjoining or adjacent property, a copy of the part of the record relating to that property and obtain their written agreement to the contents.

- Rectification work: Submit written acceptance of rectification works from the owner of each adjoining or adjacent property affected.

Tests

Requirement: Submit compliance test results for building services components to be re-used.

1.6 INSPECTION

Notice

Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:

- Adjoining and adjacent structures before starting demolition.
- Services before disconnection or diversion.
- Contents of building before starting demolition.
- Site after removal of demolished materials.
- Services after reconnection or diversion.
- Adjoining and adjacent structures at completion of demolition.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

Demolished material classes table

Class	Requirement	Ownership
Recovered items for re-use in the works	Recover without damage items identified in the **Recovered items for re-use in the works schedule**	Principal/proprietor
Recovered items for delivery to the principal	Recover without damage items identified in the **Recovered items for delivery to the principal schedule**	Principal/proprietor
Demolished material for recycling in the works	Stockpile material identified in the **Demolished material for recycling in the works schedule**	Contractor
Demolished material for recycling off-site	Demolish and deliver for recycling material identified in the **Demolished material for recycling off-site schedule**	Contractor
Dismantle for relocation as part of the works	Dismantle without damage and store items identified in the **Dismantle for relocation schedule**	Principal/proprietor
Demolish for removal	Remove from site demolished materials identified in the **Demolish for removal schedule**. Do not burn or bury on site Transit: Prevent spillage of demolishing materials in transit	Contractor

3 EXECUTION

3.1 HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES

Identified hazardous substances

Register: Hazardous substances have been identified as present on site and a Hazardous substances register has been prepared.

Audit

Requirement: Prepare a Hazardous Substances Management Plan to AS 2601 (2001) clause 1.6.1. Include the following:

- Asbestos-containing materials.

- Flammable or explosive liquids or gases.
- Toxic, infective or contaminated materials.
- Radiation or radioactive materials.
- Noxious or explosive chemicals.
- Tanks or other containers that have been used for storage of explosive, toxic, infective or contaminated substances.

Removal of hazardous substances
Standard: To AS 2601 (2001) clause 1.6.2.

3.2 INVESTIGATION AND WORK PLAN

General
Requirement: Before demolition or stripping work, prepare the work plan to AS 2601 (2001) Section 2. Include the checklist items appropriate to the project from AS 2601 (2001) Appendix A, and the following:

- Locations and details of service deviations and terminations.
- If the demolition program results in components temporarily cantilevered, provide a certificate from a professional engineer.
- Proposals for the safe use of mobile plant on suspended structural members including provisions for the protection of lower floors in the event of structural failure.
- Wheel loads of tipping or loading vehicles.
- Structural engineering report and demolition methodology, as appropriate, if the structure is suspected to contain unbonded prestress tendons.

3.3 SUPPORT

Temporary support
General: If temporary support is required, certification for its design and installation is required from a professional engineer engaged by the contractor.

Existing buildings: Until permanent support is provided, provide temporary support for sections of existing buildings, or parts of buildings, being retained which normally rely on support from work to be demolished.

Suspended slabs: If mobile plant is required for use on suspended structural members, conform to structural engineering requirements, and the work plan.

Permanent supports
General: If permanent supports for adjacent structures are necessary and are not documented, give notice and obtain instructions.

3.4 PROTECTION

Encroachment
General: Prevent the encroachment of demolished materials onto adjoining property, including public spaces.

Dust protection
General: Provide dustproof screens, bulkheads and covers to protect existing finishes and the immediate environment from dust and debris.

Security
General: If an internal wall is opened for alterations, provide security against unauthorised entry.

Temporary screens
General: Fill the whole of designated temporary openings or other spaces using dustproof and weatherproof temporary screens, fixed securely to the existing structure. Install to shed water to avoid damage to retained existing elements, and adjacent structures and contents.

Type: Timber framed screens sheeted with 12 mm plywood and painted. Seal the junctions between the screens and the openings.

Temporary access
General: If required, provide a substantial temporary doorset fitted with a rim deadlock, and remove on completion of demolition.

Fixed items
Individual protection: Protect the following items in their existing positions:

- Shopfront glazing to Gaskill Street Facade.

Recovered items
General: If items are documented for recovery and re-use, minimise damage during removal and recover all associated components required for their re-use.

3.5 DEMOLITION - BUILDING WORKS

General
Requirement: To the approved Safe Work Method Statement and work plan.

Sequence
Sequence of demolition: To be agreed with principal.

Concrete slabs
Partial demolition or penetrations: Using a diamond saw, neatly cut back or trim to new alignment with a clean true face. Do not overcut at corners. If required, provide protection to exposed reinforcement along the newly sawn concrete slab edge, as documented.

Storage: Do not store demolished materials on suspended slabs.

3.6 DEMOLITION - BUILDING SERVICES

General
Requirement: Decommission, isolate, demolish and remove from the site all equipment and associated components that become redundant as a result of the demolition.

Breaking down: Disassemble or cut up equipment where necessary to allow removal.

Demolition of refrigeration systems
Standard: To AS/NZS 5149.4 (2016).

Refrigeration system to be demolished: Coolroom.

Components for re-use
General: Before returning to service, clean components and test for conformance to Australian Standards, as required.

3.7 COMPLETION

Notice of completion
General: Give at least 5 working days' notice of completion of demolition so that adjoining or adjacent structures may be inspected following completion of demolition.

Reinstatement
Assessment of damage: Use the dilapidation record to assess the damage and rectification work arising from the demolition work.

Rectification: Repair damage arising from the demolition work. Obtain written acceptance from the owner of each adjoining or adjacent property of the completeness and standard of the rectification work.

Removal of temporary supports
General: Obtain written instructions from the structural engineer at the completion of demolition before removing temporary supports.

4 SELECTIONS

4.1 DEMOLITION

Recovered items for re-use in the works schedule

Item	Location for re-use
Cabonne Glass Sign	To be agreed.

Recovered items for delivery to the principal schedule

Item	Delivery location
Nil	

Item	Delivery location

Demolished material for recycling in the works schedule

Material
Nil

Demolished material for recycling off-site schedule

Material
As practicable

Dismantle for relocation schedule

Item	Location for storage	Location for re-assembly
Nil		

Demolish for removal schedule

Item
All else

0221 SITE PREPARATION

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide site preparation, as documented.

Performance

Areas for protection: Existing shopfront glazing along Gaskill Street.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.
- *0172 Environmental management*.

1.3 INTERPRETATION

Definitions

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the following definitions apply:

- Authority: Any organisation with statutory authority relating to the project, including clearances.
- Clearances: A formal certificate, approval or condition issued by a statutory authority allowing work in a particular area.
- Plant establishment period: The period between the date of practical completion and the end of the defects liability period.

1.4 SUBMISSIONS

Certification

Vermin: Submit pest exterminator's certification as evidence that the completed site works are free from vermin.

Execution details

Requirement: Submit details of methods and equipment proposed for the following:

- Clearing and grubbing.
- Tree removal and transplanting.
- Protecting the ground within and adjacent to tree driplines from compaction by proposed earthworks machinery.

1.5 INSPECTION

Notice

Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:

- Enclosures around trees requiring protection.
- Trees requiring removal.
- Trees for transplanting to determine final orientation.

2 EXECUTION

2.1 COMMUNITY LIAISON

Notification

General: Notify residents about construction activities that will affect access to, or disrupt the use of their properties.

Notice: Minimum 5 working days, unless the work is of an urgent nature with safety implications.

Notification content:

- Description of the work.
- The reason for the work.
- The expected duration.

- Changes to traffic arrangements and property access.
- The 24-hour contact number of the representative responsible.

2.2 EXISTING SERVICES

General

Requirement: Before starting earthworks, locate and mark existing underground services in the areas affected by the earthworks operations including clearing, excavating and trenching.

Utility services: Contact BEFORE YOU DIG AUSTRALIA to identify location of underground utility services pipes and cables.

Construction plant: Conform to the utility service provider requirements for the operation of construction plant within the zone of influence of existing services. Maintain the required cover and do not exceed the allowable load limit.

Excavation: Do not machine excavate within 1000 mm of existing services.

Existing service lines: If required, divert services detected during excavation, clear of the building, and reconnect to the utility service provider requirements.

2.3 SITE CLEARING

Extent

Requirement: Clear only areas occupied by works such as structures, paving, excavation, regrading and landscaping or other areas documented for clearing.

Contractor's site areas: If not included within the areas documented above, clear only to the extent necessary for the performance of the works.

Clearing and grubbing

Clearing: Remove everything on or above the site surface, including rubbish, scrap, grass, vegetable matter and organic debris, scrub, trees, timber, stumps, boulders and rubble.

Grubbing: Grub out stumps and roots over 75 mm diameter to a minimum depth as follows:

- Below subgrade under buildings, embankments or paving: 500 mm.
- Below finished surface in unpaved areas: 300 mm.

Backfilling: Fill holes remaining after grubbing with sand material to prevent ponding of water. Compact the material to the relative density of the existing adjacent ground material.

Redundant/decommissioned works: Remove works no longer required, including slabs, foundations, paving, drains, and access chambers and covers within the works zone.

Surplus material

Topsoil and excavated material: Remove unwanted stripped soil and other material from the site as the work proceeds, including any material dropped on footpaths or roadways.

2.4 STORMWATER AND SEDIMENT CONTROL

General

Erosion and sediment control measures: To *0172 Environmental management*.

Waterways and drains

Waterways: If required, temporarily divert ditches, field drains and other waterways affected by excavation and reinstate on completion.

Stormwater drains: Divert drains detected during excavation, clear of the building, and reconnect as documented. Conform to the Network Utility Operator's requirements.

2.5 EXISTING WORKS TO REMAIN

Marking

Requirement: Identify existing works to remain with 1000 mm high, 50 x 50 mm timber stakes connected by yellow plastic tape to prevent accidental damage.

2.6 COMPLETION

Site restoration

Requirement: Reinstate undeveloped ground surfaces to the condition existing at the commencement of the contract.

Clean up

Progressive cleaning: Keep the works clean and tidy, and regularly remove waste and surplus material arising from execution of the work from the site.

Waste disposal: To *0172 Environmental management*.

Vermin management

Requirement: Employ a suitably qualified pest exterminator to remove vermin found during site preparation.

0222 EARTHWORK

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide earthworks to the levels, dimensions and tolerances, as documented.

1.2 DESIGN

General

Geotechnical and environmental reports provided: As attached to tender

Requirements

General: To DESIGN in *0171 General requirements*.

Responsibility: Refer structural engineering documentation

Design of footing or pier depths: Calare Civil

Authority requirements: Refer approval documentation

1.3 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.
- *0172 Environmental management*.

1.4 STANDARDS

General

Earthworks: Conform to the recommendations of those parts of AS 3798 (2007) that are referenced in this worksection.

Description and classification of soils: To AS 1726 (2017).

1.5 INTERPRETATION

Abbreviations

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the following abbreviations apply:

- GITA: Geotechnical inspection and testing authority.
- OMC: Optimum moisture content.

Definitions

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the definitions given in AS 3798 (2007) and the following apply:

- Bad ground: Ground unsuitable for the works, including fill liable to subsidence, ground containing cavities, faults or fissures, ground contaminated by harmful substances and ground that is, or becomes, soft, wet or unstable.
- Rock: Monolithic material with volume greater than 0.3 m^3 that cannot be removed until broken up by rippers or percussion tools.
- Site topsoil: Natural soil, excavated from the site, that contains organic matter, supports plant life, conforms generally to the fine-to-medium texture classification to AS 4419 (2018) and is free from the following:
  - . Stones more than 25 mm diameter.
  - . Clay lumps more than 50 mm diameter.
  - . Weeds and tree roots.
  - . Sticks and rubbish.
  - . Material toxic to plants.
- Subgrade: The trimmed or prepared earth material on which the pavement, footing or slab is constructed. Generally taken to relate to the upper line of the earth material.
- Zone of influence: A foundation zone bounded by planes extending downward and outward from the bottom edge of a footing, slab or pavement and defining the extent of foundation material having influence on the stability or support of the footings, slab or pavement.

1.6 TOLERANCES

General

Finish: Finish the surface to the required level, grade and shape within the following tolerances:

- Under building slabs and load bearing elements: +0, -25 mm.
- Pavement subgrades: +0, -40 mm.
- Batters: No steeper than the slope shown on the drawings. Make sure flatter slopes do not impact on boundaries or required clearances to buildings, pavements or landscaping.
- Other ground surfaces: ±50 mm, provided the area remains free draining and matches adjacent construction where required. Provide smoothness as normally produced by a scraper blade.

1.7 SUBMISSIONS

Design documentation

Calculations: Submit calculations by a professional engineer showing the stability and safety of proposed excavations and temporary supports, including supports required for adjacent structures.

Execution details

Report: Submit a time-based schedule detailing the methods and equipment proposed for the earthworks, including the following:

- Dewatering and groundwater control and disposal of surface water.
- Excavation methods, stages, clearances, batters and temporary supports.
- Stockpiles and borrow pits.
- Placing and compaction methods and stages.

Geotechnical site investigations: Provide a geotechnical report supporting the excavation methods proposed.

Disposal location: Submit details of the location and evidence of compliance with the appropriate authority requirements for the disposal of material requiring removal from site.

Temporary shoring: Submit a proposal for any temporary shoring required, including the progressive removal.

Proof rolling: Submit details of proposed method and equipment.

Records of measurement: Submit a certified copy of the agreed records of measurement.

Site records: Submit the following to AS 3798 (2007) clause 3.4 and Appendix B:

- Geotechnical site visit record.
- Earthworks summary report or daily geotechnical reports.

Products and materials

Imported fill: Submit certification from a GITA or test results of the imported fill as evidence of conformity with the contract, including the source.

Tests

Requirement: Submit test results of the following:

- Compaction control.

1.8 INSPECTION

Notice

Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:

- Items to be measured as listed in **RECORDS OF MEASUREMENT**.
- Areas to be cleared and/or stripped of topsoil.
- Areas stripped of topsoil.
- Excavation completed to contract levels or founding material.
- Proof rolling of the subgrade.
- Proof rolled subgrade before placing fill.
- Filling and compaction completed to contract levels.
- Stockpiled topsoil before spreading.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FILL MATERIALS

General

Suitable material: To AS 3798 (2007) clause 4.4 including inorganic, non-perishable material suitably graded and capable of compaction to the documented density.

Unsuitable materials: Do not use fill defined as unsuitable by AS 3798 (2007) clause 4.3.

Sulfur content: Do not provide material with sulfur content exceeding 0.5% within 500 mm of concrete and cement bound elements (for example masonry) unless the elements are protected by impermeable membranes or equivalent means.

Re-use of excavated material: Only re-use suitable material.

Stockpiles

General: Segregate earth and rock material and stockpile for re-use in backfilling operations.

Location: Do not stockpile excavated material against tree trunks, buildings or fences. Do not obstruct the free flow of water along drainage channels.

2.2 BORROW OR IMPORTED FILL

General

Requirement: Use only when suitable material obtained from site excavations are insufficient for completing the documented earthworks.

- Suitable material: To AS 3798 (2007) clause 4.4.

Borrow pits:

- Locate more than 3000 mm from any fence line, boundary, edge of excavation or embankment.
- Strip and stockpile topsoil.
- Provide erosion protection during winning operations of material and make sure drainage is maintained.
- On completion of winning operations, grade abrupt changes of slope, respread topsoil, and apply and maintain hydroseeded grassing.

2.3 GEOTEXTILE

General

Material: UV stabilised, permeable, polymeric, woven or non-woven textile material used in contact with soil/rock material.

Identification and marking: To AS 3705 (2012).

3 EXECUTION

3.1 SITE PREPARATION

Erosion and sedimentation control

Requirement: To *0172 Environmental management*.

3.2 GEOTECHNICAL

As found site conditions

General: If the following are encountered, give notice and obtain instructions before carrying out any further work in the affected area:

- Bad ground.
- Discrepancy in expected conditions.
- Rock.
- Springs, seepages.
- Topsoil more than 100 mm deep.

Inspection and testing

Frequency of testing: To AS 3798 (2007) Table 8.1.

3.3 RECORDS OF MEASUREMENT

Excavation and backfilling

Agreed quantities: If a schedule of rates applies, provisional quantities are documented, or there are variations to the contract levels or dimensions of excavations, do not backfill or place permanent works in the excavation until the following have been agreed and recorded:

- Depths of excavations in relation to the datum.
- Final plan dimensions of excavations.
- Quantities of excavations in rock.

Method of measurement: By a registered surveyor.

Rock

Level and class: If rock is measured for payment purposes, either as extra over excavation of material other than rock or for adjustment of provisional measurements, do not remove the rock until the commencing levels and classes of rock have been determined.

3.4 REMOVAL OF TOPSOIL

General

Extent: Areas of cut or fill and areas to be occupied by structures, pavements and embankments.

Maximum depth: 200 mm.

Disposal: Remove topsoil unsuitable for re-use from the site to AS 3798 (2007) clause 6.1.8.

Topsoil stockpiles

General: Stockpile site topsoil intended for re-use.

Stockpile maximum height: 1.5 m.

Identification: Mark and label stockpiles of different soil types.

Vegetation: Do not burn off or remove plant growth that occurs during storage.

Protection: Conform to the following:

- Provide drainage and erosion protection.
- Do not allow traffic on stockpiles.
- If a stockpile is to remain for more than four weeks, sow with temporary grass.
- Protect the topsoil stockpiles from contamination by other excavated material, weeds and building debris.

3.5 EXCAVATION

Extent

Site surface: Excavate the site to the levels and profiles required for the documented structures, pavements, filling and landscaping. Make allowance for compaction, settlement or heaving.

Footings, pits, wells and shafts: Excavate to the required sizes and depths. Confirm the foundation conditions meet the design bearing capacity.

Bearing surfaces

Requirement: Provide even plane bearing surfaces for loadbearing elements including footings. Step to accommodate level changes, as documented. If supporting masonry, make the steps appropriate to the courses.

Rock

General: Do not use explosives.

Existing footings

Requirement: If excavation is required within the zone of influence of an existing footing, provide supports to the footing sufficient to prevent damage arising from the works. Use methods including temporary shoring or underpinning.

Existing services

Location: Before starting earthworks, locate and mark existing underground services in the areas that will be affected by the earthworks operations including clearing, excavating and trenching.

Utility services: Contact BEFORE YOU DIG AUSTRALIA to identify location of underground utility services pipes and cables.

Excavation: Do not excavate by machine within 1000 mm of existing services.

Proof rolling
Extent: Proof roll excavations for pavements, filling and non-spanning slabs on ground to determine the presence of bad ground.

Proof rolling method and equipment: To AS 3798 (2007) clause 5.5.

Requirement: If excessive settlement, rebound or heaving is encountered, provide test pits or trenching to determine the extent of bad ground.

Subgrade replacement: Excavate the full extent and depth of bad ground. Remove and replace with selected fill. Place and compact to **PLACING FILL** to achieve the required capacity and levels.

Disposal of excess excavated material
General: If not required or unsuitable for fill, remove from site.

Standard: To AS 3798 (2007) clause 6.1.8.

3.6 REINSTATEMENT

Deterioration of bearing surfaces
Requirement: If the bearing surface deteriorates, excavate to a sound surface before placing the loadbearing element.

Subgrades affected by moisture
Requirement: If, due to high moisture content, the subgrade cannot support construction equipment or the overlying pavement cannot be compacted, perform one or more of the following:

- Allow the subgrade to dry until it provides support for equipment and allows compaction.
- Scarify the subgrade to a depth of 150 mm, work as necessary to accelerate drying, and recompact when the moisture content is satisfactory.
- Excavate the wet material and move to spoil stockpile, and backfill excavated areas.

Over excavation
Requirement: If excavation exceeds the required depths, reinstate to the correct depths, levels and bearing capacity.

Zone of influence: Within the zone of influence of footings, beams, or other structural elements, use concrete of strength equal to the structural element, minimum 15 MPa. Make sure that remedial concrete does not create differential bearing conditions.

Below slabs or pavements: Rectify the over excavation as follows:

- Generally: Provide selected fill compacted to the documented density.
- Less than 100 mm: Do not backfill. Increase the thickness of the layer above.

Subsoil drains: Backfill over excavation of subsoil drains using coarse filter material conforming to AS/NZS 3500.3 (2021) clause 2.13.1.

3.7 SUPPORTING EXCAVATIONS

Removal of supports
General: Remove temporary supports progressively as backfilling proceeds.

Voids
General: If voids occur outside sheeting or sheet piling, fill and compact voids to a dry density similar to that of the surrounding material.

3.8 ADJACENT STRUCTURES

Temporary supports
General: If required, provide supports to adjacent structures, sufficient to prevent damage arising from the works.

Lateral supports: Provide lateral support with shoring.

Vertical supports: If required, provide vertical support with piling or underpinning or both.

Permanent supports
General: If permanent supports for adjacent structures are required and are not documented, give notice and obtain instructions.

Encroachments
General: If encroachments from adjacent structures are encountered and are not documented, give notice and obtain instructions.

3.9 ROCK BOLTING

General

Requirement: For temporary or permanent support of rock faces, provide proprietary high strength steel bars or cables anchored into holes drilled in the rock and tensioned against plates bearing on the rock face. Schedule the installation to conform to systematic bolting or calculated relief, as documented.

Standard: To AS 4678 (2002).

Protection

General: Protect permanent rock bolts by grouting the drilled hole with cement grout after tensioning the rock bolt. Protect the bearing plate and the exposed portion of rock bolt and anchorage with a protective coating or by embedment in concrete.

3.10 GEOTEXTILE

General

Preparation: Trim the ground to a smooth surface free from cavities and projecting rocks.

Installation: Lay the fabric flat, not stretched tight, and secure with anchor pins. Overlap joints 300 mm minimum.

3.11 PREPARATION FOR FILLING

Preparation

Stripping: Prepare the ground surface before placing fill (including topsoil fill), ground slabs or load bearing elements to AS 3798 (2007) clause 6.1.5. Remove loose material, debris, organic matter and material that inhibits or prevents satisfactory placement of fill layers.

Foundation preparation: To AS 3798 (2007) clause 6.1.7.

Compaction: Compact the ground exposed after stripping or excavation, to a minimum depth of 150 mm, to the minimum relative compaction in AS 3798 (2007) Table 5.1.

Ground treatment or improvement methods:

- Scarify method: Loosen exposed excavation by scarifying to a minimum of 150 mm, moisture-condition and compact to AS 3798 (2007) Section 5.
- Impact roller and impact compaction: Use an approved method.

Slope preparation: If fill is placed on a surface steeper than 4:1 (horizontal:vertical), bench the surface to form a key for the fill. As each layer of fill is placed, cut the existing ground surface progressively to form a series of horizontal steps more than 1 m in width and more than 100 mm deep. Recompact the excavated material as part of the filling. Shape to provide free drainage.

Under earth mounds

General: Cultivate the ground to a depth of 200 mm before mound formation.

Under slabs, paving and embankments

General: If required, loosen the ground to a depth of more than 200 mm and adjust the moisture content before compaction to a density consistent with subsequent filling.

Rock ledges

General: Remove overhanging rock ledges.

3.12 PLACING FILL

General

Extent: Place fill to the documented dimensions, levels, grades, and cross-sections so that the surface is always self-draining.

Layers: Place fill in near-horizontal layers of uniform thickness no greater than 150 mm after compaction, deposited systematically across the fill area.

Edges: At junctions of fill and existing surfaces, do not feather the edges.

Mix: Place fill in a uniform mixture.

Previous fill: Before placing subsequent fill layers, make sure that previously accepted layers still conform to requirements, including moisture content.

Protection: Protect the works from damage due to compaction operations. If required, limit the size of compaction equipment or compact by hand.

Protective covering to membranes: Do not disturb or damage during backfilling.

Placing at structures

Fill adjacent structures and trenches: To AS 3798 (2007) clause 6.2.6.

Requirement: Place and compact fill in layers simultaneously on both sides of structures, culverts and pipelines to avoid differential loading. Commence compacting each layer at the structure and proceed away from structure.

Over the top of structures: Carefully place first layers of fill.

Retaining walls: Do not place fill against concrete retaining walls until the concrete has been in place for 28 days unless the structure is supported by struts.

Compaction

General: Compact the subgrade and each layer of fill to the required depth and density, as a systematic construction operation. Shape surface to provide drainage and prevent ponding.

Maximum rock and lump size in layer after compaction: To AS 3798 (2007) clause 6.2.2.

Fill batter faces: Either compact separately, or overfill and cut back. Form roughened surfaces to the faces.

Minimum relative compaction: To AS 3798 (2007) Table 5.1.

3.13 PLACING TOPSOIL

Stockpiled topsoil

Cultivation: Rip subgrade to a depth of 100 mm or to the depth of rippable subgrade if less. Cultivate around services and tree roots by hand. Trim to allow for the required topsoil depth.

Herbicide: Apply before placing topsoil.

Placing: Spread and grade evenly.

Compaction: Lightly compact topsoil so that the finished surface is smooth, free from lumps of soil, at the required level, ready for cultivation and planting.

Edges: Finish topsoil flush with abutting kerbs, mowing strips and paved surfaces. Feather edges into adjoining undisturbed ground.

Disposal of excess topsoil

On-site: Dispose of surplus topsoil remaining on site by spreading evenly over the areas already placed.

Off-site: Remove excess topsoil from the site and dispose of legally.

3.14 FILL MOISTURE CONTROL

General

Moisture content: Determine in conformance with AS 1289.5.1.1 (2017) or AS 1289.5.2.1 (2017), as appropriate. Adjust the moisture content of fill to ±2% OMC during compaction as required to achieve the documented density.

3.15 TESTING

Site tests

Compaction control tests: To AS 1289.5.4.1 (2007) or AS 1289.5.7.1 (2006).

Test frequency: To AS 3798 (2007) Table 8.1.

3.16 COMPLETION

Geotechnical report

Grading

External areas: Grade to give falls away from buildings, minimum 1:100.

Subfloor areas: Grade the ground surface under suspended floors to drain ground or surface water away from buildings without ponding.

Site restoration

Requirement: If variation of existing ground surfaces is not required as part of the works, restore surfaces to the condition existing at the commencement of the contract.

0310 CONCRETE - COMBINED

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide cast in situ reinforced concrete, as documented.

Performance

Requirements:

- Conforming to the design details and performance criteria.
- Satisfying quality and inspection requirements.
- Compatible with documented applied finishes.

1.2 DESIGN

General

Formwork: The design of formwork, other than permanent composite form systems, is the contractor's responsibility. Allow for dimensional changes, deflections and cambers resulting from the following:

- Imposed actions.
- Concrete shrinkage and creep.
- Temperature changes.
- The application of prestressing forces (if any).

Structural design: To AS 3600 (2018).

Post-tensioned concrete: To AS 3600 (2018).

Concrete structures retaining liquids: To AS 3735 (2001).

Requirements

General: To DESIGN in *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.

1.4 STANDARDS

General

Formwork design and construction: To AS 3610.1 (2018) and AS 3610.2 (Int) (2023).

Plywood formwork: To AS 6669 (2016).

Composite steel-concrete construction, including profiled steel sheeting and shear connectors: To AS/NZS 2327 (2017).

Reinforced concrete construction: To AS 3600 (2018).

Specification and supply of concrete: To AS 1379 (2007).

Concrete structures for retaining liquids: To AS 3735 (2001).

Residential ground slabs and footings: To AS 2870 (2011).

Post-tensioned concrete: To AS 3600 (2018).

Strand, bar and wire: To AS 4672.1 (2007).

Design, installation and testing of post-installed and cast-in fastenings: To AS 5216 (2021).

Formed surfaces: To AS 3610.1 (2018).

Slip resistance

Classification: To AS 4586 (2013).

1.5 INTERPRETATION

Definitions

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the definitions given in AS/NZS 1314 (2003), AS 1379 (2007), AS 3600 (2018), AS 3610.1 (2018) and the following apply:

- Ambient temperature: The air temperature at the time of mixing and placing of concrete.
- Anti-burst reinforcement: Reinforcement cage surrounding anchorages to control the tensile bursting stresses.
- Early age strength: A mean compressive strength at 7 days exceeding the values shown in AS 1379 (2007) Table 1.2.
- Green concrete: Concrete that has recently set but has not achieved any design strength.
- Sample: A portion of material taken for assessment, representative of the larger quantity of material from which it was taken.
- Specimen: A portion of a sample that is submitted for testing.
- Weather – cold: Ambient shade temperature less than 10°C.
- Weather – hot: Ambient shade temperature greater than 30°C.

1.6 TOLERANCES

Formwork

Plumb of elements > 8 m high: 1:1000.

Plumb of elements ≤ 8 m high: To AS 3610.1 (2018).

Position: Construct formwork so that finished concrete conforms to AS 3600 (2018) clause 17.5, AS 3610.1 (2018) clause 3.3 and as documented.

Reinforcement

Fabrication: To AS 3600 (2018) clause 17.2.

Reinforcement and tendon position: To AS 3600 (2018) clause 17.5.3.

Formed surfaces

Form face deflections: To AS 3610.1 (2018) Table 3.3.4.1.

Straight elements: To AS 3610.1 (2018) Table 3.3.5.1.

Unformed surfaces

Flatness: To the **Flatness tolerance class table**, using a straightedge placed anywhere on the surface in any direction, for the documented class of finish.

Flatness tolerance class table

Class	Measurement	Maximum deviation (mm)
A	2 m straightedge	4
B	3 m straightedge	6
C	600 mm straightedge	6

1.7 SUBMISSIONS

Certification

Formwork design certification: For all formwork other than permanent composite form systems, submit certification by a professional engineer experienced in formwork design verifying conformance of the design.

Formwork execution certification: Submit certification by a professional engineer experienced in formwork design and construction, verifying conformance of the completed formwork, including the suitability of the formwork for the documented surface finish class.

Design documentation

Formwork calculations: Submit calculations by a professional engineer experienced in formwork design to show that allowable concrete stresses will not be exceeded and if proposed, formwork designed for the following:

- Formwork procedures or loadings that differ from those documented.
- Props above a floor that do not coincide with the props below.
- Undocumented formwork shoring or stripping procedures.
- Loadings from stacked materials.

Post-tensioned calculations: Submit the following:

- Calculations of tendon jacking forces, theoretical extensions and losses for each stressing stage and at final stressing, before stressing operations begin.
- Expected loss of prestress due to friction in the jack and anchorage, and along the tendon including the friction curvature coefficient and the angular deviation due to wobble effects.
- Expected draw-in during anchorage.

Execution details

Moveable formwork: Provide the following details on the formwork drawings:

- Table form and climbing formwork: Proposed method and sequence of moving the formwork to provide concrete of the documented quality and surface finish.
- Continuously climbing formwork (Slipform): The average rate of movement.

Reshoring: Submit details of any proposed reshoring.

Reinforcement: Submit the following:

- General: Details of any proposed changes to documented reinforcement.
- Damaged galvanizing: Details of proposed repair to AS/NZS 4680 (2006) Section 8.
- Mechanical bar splices: Details and test certificates for each size and type of bar to be spliced.
- Provision for concrete placement: Details of spacing or cover to reinforcement that does not conform to AS 3600 (2018).
- Splicing: Details of any proposed changes to documented requirements.
- Welding: Details of any proposed welding of reinforcement to AS/NZS 1554.3 (2014).

Post-tensioning: Submit the following:

- Details of the proposed post-tensioning system tested and certified to AS/NZS 1314 (2003).
- Safe work method statement (SWMS) including the name and contact details of the subcontractor.
- Details of proposed gauging, stressing and grouting equipment including current calibration certificates.

Concrete: Submit proposals for mixing, placing, finishing and curing concrete including the following:

- Changes to the concrete mix.
- Changes to documented joint locations.
- Curing and protection methods.
- Cutting or displacing reinforcement, or cutting or coring hardened concrete.
- Handling, placement, compaction and finishing methods and equipment, including pumping.
- Placement under water.
- Sequence and times for concrete placement, and construction joint locations. Include any proposed sequential placement of slab segments.
- Site storage, mixing and transport methods and equipment, if applicable.
- Temperature control methods to suit hot or cold atmospheric conditions during concrete placement.
- Sawn joints: Submit details of proposed methods, timing and sequence of sawing joints.

Loading: Submit details of proposed construction systems, loads and procedures, including propping, re-shoring and any proposals for early application of superimposed loads.

Formwork removal: Submit formwork removal procedures.

Emergency construction joints: If emergency construction joints are required, submit a report on the action taken.

Surface repairs: If surface repairs are required, submit proposed methods.

Products and materials

Void formers: Submit type-test results as evidence of conformity to requirements of **FORMWORK**, **Error! Reference source not found.**.

Reinforcement strength and ductility: Submit type-test reports as evidence of conformity to AS 3600 (2018) Table 3.2.1 for each reinforcement type.

Post-tensioning: Submit the following:

- Grout: Proposed grout mix (including grading, proportions, compressive strength, shrinkage and additives if any).
- Epoxy grout: If required, proposed formulation.

Post-tensioning type tests: Submit test reports for the following:

- Anchorage.

- Anchorage assemblies and couplings.
- Post-tensioning steel: Test certificates for every delivery of strand, bar or wire proposed.

Concrete product conformity: Submit evidence of conformity, as appropriate, as follows:

- Certification by a JASANZ accredited third party.
- Test report describing tests and giving results that demonstrate that the product conforms.

Concrete mixes: Submit details, for each grade and type of concrete including any proposed use of special-purpose cement types.

Pre-mixed supply delivery dockets: For each batch, submit a docket listing the information required by AS 1379 (2007), and the following:

- For special-class performance concrete: Documented performance and type of cement binder.
- For special-class prescription concrete: Details of mix, additives, and type of cement binder.
- Fibre reinforcement type and dosage.
- Method of placement and climate conditions during pour.
- Name of concrete delivery supervisor.
- Project assessment carried out each day.
- The concrete element or part of the works for which the concrete was ordered, and where it was placed.
- The total amount of water added at the plant and the maximum amount permitted to be added at the site.

Curing compounds: Submit details of any proposed curing compounds, including the following:

- Dosage rates.
- Certified type-test results for water retention to AS 3799 (1998) Appendix B for liquid membrane-forming compounds.
- Evidence of compatibility with concrete, and with applied finishes including toppings and render, if any, including methods of obtaining the required adhesion.
- For visually important surfaces, evidence that an acceptable final surface colour will be obtained.

Admixtures: Submit details of any proposed admixtures, including the following:

- Brand name.
- Place of manufacture.
- Basic chemical composition.

Records

Post-tensioning: Submit the following:

- Tendon installation record.
- Post-tensioning stressing schedule.
- Post-tensioning grouting record.

Site extensions: Submit the site extensions to **POST-TENSIONING**, **Stressing** on the same day as measured for review and approval by a professional engineer.

Samples

Requirement: Submit samples to PRODUCTS, **GENERAL**, **Samples**.

Shop drawings

Formwork: Submit shop drawings including details of proposed forms, falsework, form liners, bolt positions, release agents and, where applicable, re-use of formwork.

Post-tensioned drawings: Submit shop drawings showing the following:

- Concrete profiles.
- Reinforcement.
- Profiles, sizes and details of tendons, tendon numbers, anchorages, ducts, duct formers, splicing, sheathing, end block reinforcement and other associated components.
- Stressing requirements including sequence of stressing, jacking forces and the basis of assumed loss calculations.
- Number, size and position of grout openings, vents and drain holes in the ducts.

Cores, fixings and embedded items: Submit the proposed locations, clearances and cover and show any proposed repositioning of reinforcement.

Subcontractors
Pre-mixed supply: Submit names and contact details of proposed pre-mixed concrete suppliers and alternative source of supply in the event of breakdown of pre-mixed or site mixed supply.

Tests
Requirement: Submit test results of the following:
- Concrete:
  . Early age compressive strength.
  . Other concrete properties, as documented.
- Grout:
  . Fluidity.
  . Bleeding.
  . Early expansion.
  . Compressive strength.
- Slip resistance test of completed installations.

1.8 INSPECTION

Notice
Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:
- Used forms, after cleaning and before re-use.
- Base or subgrade before covering.
- Membrane or film underlay installed on the base or subgrade.
- Completed formwork with all dust and debris removed from forms and reinforcement, tendons, cores, fixings and embedded items fixed in place before placing concrete.
- Concealed surfaces or elements before covering.
- Commencement of concrete placement and compaction.
- Finishing and curing of concrete.
- Evaluation of the off-form finishes.
- Evaluation of surface finish.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Samples
Requirement: Provide samples, as follows:
- Sample blocks of coloured concrete produced using the proposed mix and casting method before casting final concrete, as follows:
  . Number: 4.
  . Size (nominal): 300 x 300 x 50 mm.
- Duct-forming material.

2.2 FORMWORK

General
Form face, linings and release agents: Compatible with documented concrete surface finish and any proposed applied finishes to concrete.

Lost formwork: Free of timber or chlorides and not to impair the structural performance of the concrete members.

Void formers
Requirement: Material capable of maintaining rigidity and shape until the concrete has set, capable of withstanding construction loads and non-collapsible on absorption of moisture.

Laboratory testing: Use void formers tested under laboratory conditions for conformance with the following:
- Deflection during placing and compaction of the concrete does not exceed beam or slab span/1000.
- Additional deflection between initial set and 7 days does not exceed span/400.

Test method: Place formers on damp sand and load with a mass of wet concrete at least equal to the mass of the beams or slabs to be supported.

Profiled steel sheeting composite forms

Material: Hot-dipped zinc-coated sheet steel to AS 1397 (2021).

Minimum steel grade: G550.

Zinc coating mass: [complete/delete]

Accessories: Use materials and corrosion protection compatible with the profiled steel sheeting.

Plywood forms

Material: To AS 6669 (2016).

Grade: Use appropriate grade for the documented design dimensions, loading and surface quality.

Joints: Seal the joints consistent with the documented surface finish class.

Tolerances: To AS 3610.1 (2018) Section 3.

2.3 REINFORCEMENT

Fibre reinforcement

Steel fibres: To AS 3600 (2018) clause 16.7.1.

Synthetic fibres: To EN 14889-2 (2006).

Storage: Store in a dry environment. Do not stack.

Steel reinforcement

Standard: To AS/NZS 4671 (2019).

Fabrication tolerances: To AS 3600 (2018) clause 17.2.2.

Surface condition: Provide surfaces conforming to the following:

- Free of loose or flaking mill scale and rust.
- Clean from oil, grease, mud or other material that would reduce the bond between the reinforcement and concrete.

Storage: Store reinforcement above the surface of the ground and protect from damage and deterioration by exposure.

Protective coating

Standard: To AS 3600 (2018) clause 17.2.1.2.

Requirement: For concrete elements containing protective coated reinforcement, provide the same coating type to all that element's reinforcement and embedded ferrous metal items, including tie wires, stools, spacers, stirrups, plates and ferrules, and protect other embedded metals with a suitable coating.

Epoxy coating: High-build, high solids, chemically resistant coating to AS/NZS 3750.14 (1997).

- Thickness: 200 µm minimum.

Galvanizing: To AS/NZS 4680 (2006), and as follows:

- Sequence: If fabricating after galvanizing, repair damaged galvanizing and coat cut ends.
- Zinc-coating (minimum): 600 g/m^2.

Tie wire

General: Annealed steel 1.25 mm diameter (minimum).

External and corrosive applications: Galvanized.

Supports

Standard: To AS/NZS 2425 (2015).

2.4 POST-TENSIONING

Grout properties

Standard: To AS 3600 (2018) clause 17.1.8.

Fluidity: Efflux times as follows:

- Immediately after mixing: 15 to 20 seconds.
- At the end of grouting or 45 minutes after mixing, whichever occurs first: Within ±3 seconds of the efflux time recorded immediately after mixing.

Maximum bleed: 0.5% final bleeding.

Maximum early expansion: 0.5% at 3 hours.

Maximum shrinkage: 1% by volume after 24 hours.

Maximum water:cement ratio: 0.4 (by mass).

Compressive strength: 32 MPa at 7 days.

Grout materials

Fine aggregates: Maximum nominal aggregate size of 1 mm. Do not use aggregates for post-tensioning grout when the cross-sectional area of the duct is less than 5 times the cross-sectional area of the tendon.

Cement: To AS 3972 (2010), free from calcium chloride and less than two months old.

Admixtures: To AS 1478.1 (2000). Include an anti-bleed additive.

Fly ash: To AS/NZS 3582.1 (2016), proportioned according to obtain early strength requirements.

Water: To AS 1379 (2007). Clean, free from oil, acid, alkali, organic or vegetable matter and including not more than 500 mg/L of chloride ions.

Epoxy grout type: Commercial epoxy formulation of compressive strength exceeding 40 MPa.

Ducts

Robustness: Provide ducts with sufficient strength to retain their shape, resist damage during construction, and prevent deterioration or electrolytic action due to cement paste or water from the concrete entering the duct.

Wall thickness: To allow for abrasion during stressing of the tendon.

Size: To allow feeding of tendons and grouting.

Tendon material

Prestressing steel: Provide the following:

- Type and grade of strand, wire or bar, to AS 4672.1 (2007).
- Testing to AS/NZS 4672.2 (2007).

Strand type: 7 wire, stress relieved, high tensile steel.

Quality: Make sure tendons are not galvanized, have no nicks, pitting, indents, damage or foreign matter such as mud and dirt. Inspect at delivery and store the prestressing steel on supports clear of the ground.

Straightening of tendons: Not permitted. Supply tendons in coils large enough to self-straighten.

High tensile steel bars: Inspect individually and reject any bars with surface imperfections.

Anchorage, coupling or anchorage assembly

General: To AS/NZS 1314 (2003).

Anchor plates: Hot-dip galvanized to AS/NZS 4680 (2006).

Anchorage: Stressing anchorage efficiency to AS/NZS 1314 (2003) Appendix C and non-stressing anchorage efficiency to AS/NZS 1314 (2003) Appendix D.

Anchorage assemblies and couplings: Gripping efficiency to AS/NZS 1314 (2003) Appendix B and non-stressing anchorage efficiency to AS/NZS 1314 (2003) Appendix D.

2.5 CONCRETE

General

Stockpile: If uniform, consistent colour is documented, stockpile sand, cement and aggregates.

Properties

Concrete mix and supply: Conform to the following:

- Normal-class: To AS 1379 (2007) clause 1.5.3.
  - . Properties: As documented.
- Special-class: To AS 1379 (2007) clause 1.5.4.
  - . Performance properties: As documented.
  - . Prescription properties: As documented.

Aggregates

Standard: To AS 2758.1 (2014).

Storage: Store in silos or on a hardstand located away from surface and ground water runoff. Allow for free drainage of rainwater and prevent contamination and intermixing of aggregates.

Cement

Standard: To AS 3972 (2010).

Age: Less than 6 months old.

Storage: Store cement bags in a dry, under cover and above ground environment.

Supplementary cementitious materials:

- Fly ash: To AS/NZS 3582.1 (2016).
- Slag: To AS 3582.2 (2016).
- Amorphous silica: To AS/NZS 3582.3 (2016).
- Manufactured pozzolans: To AS 3582.4 (2022).

Water

Standard: To AS 1379 (2007) clause 2.4.

Requirement: Clean, free from oil, acid, alkali, organic or vegetable matter and not more than 500 mg/L of chloride ions.

Concrete colour

Standard: To AS 3610.1 (2018).

Chemical admixtures

Standard: To AS 1478.1 (2000), used to manufacturer's recommendations and free from chlorides, and other substances detrimental to concrete or reinforcing steel.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS

Polymeric film underlay

Vapour barriers and damp-proofing membranes: To AS 2870 (2011) clause 5.3.3.

Curing compounds

Liquid membrane-forming compounds: To AS 3799 (1998).

Joint fillers and sealants

Jointing materials: Provide jointing materials compatible with each other, and non-staining to concrete in visible locations.

Foamed materials (in compressible fillers): Closed cell or impregnated, not water absorbing.

Surface modifiers

Hardeners, sealants and protectors: If documented, proprietary products conforming to the manufacturer’s recommendations.

Slip resistance treatment: If documented, proprietary products conforming to the manufacturer's recommendations.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 POLYMERIC FILM UNDERLAY

Location

Vapour barrier: Under slabs on ground, including integral ground beams and footings.

Damp-proofing membrane: Areas prone to rising damp or salt attack.

Base preparation

Requirement: Conform to base type, as follows:

- Concrete working base: Remove projections above the plane surface, and any loose material.
- Graded prepared subgrade: Blind with sand to create a smooth surface free from hard projections. Lightly wet the sand just before laying the underlay.

Installation

Standard: To AS 2870 (2011) clause 5.3.3.

Requirement: Lay underlay over the base, as follows:

- Lap joints at least 200 mm and seal the laps and penetrations with waterproof adhesive tape.
- Face the laps away from the direction of concrete pour.
- Continue up vertical faces past the damp-proof course where applicable, and tape fix at the top.
- Patch or seal punctures or tears before placing concrete.
- Cut back as required after concrete has gained strength and formwork has been removed.

3.2 FORMWORK

General

Requirement: As documented.

Bolt holes

Formwork tie bolts left in the concrete: Position to achieve minimum 50 mm concrete cover to bolt.

Corners

Work above ground: Bevel with a chamfer at re-entrant angles, and a fillet at corners.

Face of bevel: 25 mm.

Embedments

Fixing: Fix embedments through formwork to prevent movement, or loss of slurry or concrete, during concrete placement.

Joints

Requirement: Provide joints that prevent loss of grout.

Openings

Vertical forms: Provide openings or removable panels for inspection and cleaning, at the base of columns, walls and deep beams.

Access: For thin walls and columns, provide access panels for placing concrete.

Release agents

Application: Before placing reinforcement, apply a release agent to form face and linings. Spread the coating uniformly in a thin film and remove any surplus before placing concrete.

Staining: If oil or grease is used, make sure that surfaces to be exposed will not be stained or discoloured.

Unlined timber forms: Thoroughly wet timber before oiling.

Climbing formwork

Provision for inspection: Provide access below the movable formwork, from which surface treatment and inspection may be carried out.

Profiled steel sheeting composite formwork

Fixing: If sheeting cannot be fixed to structural steel supports with puddle welds, or with welded shear studs, provide details of proposed fixings.

Steel linings

Rust: Clean off any rust and apply rust inhibiting agent prior to re-use.

Visually important surfaces

Surface finish classes 1, 2 or 3: Set out the formwork to give a regular arrangement of panels, joints, bolt holes, and similar visible elements in the formed surface.

Void formers

Protection: Keep void formers dry until use, install on a firm level surface and place reinforcement and concrete with minimum delay.

3.3 REINFORCEMENT

General

Fixing: To AS 3600 (2018) clause 17.2.5 and as documented.

Dowels

Fixing: If a dowel has an unpainted half, embed that half in the concrete placed first.

Tolerances:

- Alignment: 1:100.
- Location: ± half the diameter of the dowel.

Grade: 250N.

Cover

Generally: As documented, to AS 3600 (2018) clause 4.10.

Structures for retaining liquids: As documented, to AS 3735 (2001) clause 4.4.

Residential ground slabs and footings: As documented, to AS 2870 (2011).

Supports

Concrete, metal or plastic supports: Provide as follows:

- Able to withstand construction and traffic loads.
- With a protective coating if they are ferrous metal, located within the concrete cover zone, or are used with galvanized or zinc-coated reinforcement.

Spacing:

- Bars: ≤ 60 bar diameters.
- Mesh: ≤ 600 mm.

Supports over membranes: Prevent damage to waterproofing membranes or vapour barriers. If appropriate, place a metal or plastic plate under each support.

Projecting reinforcement

Protection: If starter or other bars extend beyond reinforcement mats or cages, through formwork or from cast concrete, provide a plastic protective cap to each bar until it is cast into later work.

Bending

Restriction: Use only bars with bends as documented.

Site bending: If required to bend or straighten bars on site, conform to AS 3600 (2018) clause 17.2.3.2. Do not use heat, and only use methods that will not damage the steel and its structural properties.

Protective coatings: Repair coatings damaged by cutting or bending.

Tying

Requirement: Secure the reinforcement against displacement at intersections with wire ties or clips. Bend the ends of wire ties to prevent the ties projecting into the concrete cover.

Beams: Tie stirrups to bars in each corner of each stirrup. Fix other longitudinal bars to stirrups at 1 m maximum intervals.

Bundled bars: If required, tie bundled bars in closest possible contact. Provide tie wire at least 2.5 mm diameter and spaced not more than 24 times the diameter of the smallest bar in the bundle.

Columns: Secure longitudinal column reinforcement to all fitments (or helical reinforcement) at every intersection.

Mats: For bar reinforcement in the form of a mat, secure each bar at alternate intersections.

Splices

Requirement: Provide splices, as documented.

Welding: Do not weld reinforcement less than 3 bar diameters in length from any part of a bar that has been bent or re-straightened.

Fibre-reinforced concrete

Steel fibres: To AS 3600 (2018) Section 16.

Synthetic fibres: To EN 14889-2 (2006).

3.4 POST-TENSIONING

General

Protection: Protect post-tensioning tendons, anchorages, ducts, supports and grout from damage or contaminants, including from swarf, loose grease, oil and paint.

Tolerances: To AS 3600 (2018) clause 17.5.3.

Concrete cover: As documented.

Anchorages, ducts and tendons: To AS 3600 (2018) clause 17.3.

Ducts

Placement: Locate and secure to positions, as documented.

Supports: Support and fix at regular intervals. Protect from collapse and other damage.

Sheathing: If ducts are formed with sheaths, provide sheathing material capable of transferring the tendon stresses to the body of the concrete.

Sequence: Assemble tendons on site by installing strand, bar or wire within the duct before concreting.

Damage: If damaged, repair ducts as follows:

- Small holes: Waterproof adhesive tape.
- Larger holes: Metal strips wrapped around the duct, with 100 mm overlap and sealed by a waterproof adhesive tape.

Crossover points: If ducts running in opposite directions clash, consult the professional engineer. Do not relocate ducts without approval.

Anchorages

Anti-burst reinforcement: As documented.

Tendons

Conformance: Provide tendons, as documented.

Care: Do not weld tendons. Do not expose tendons to sparks, ground current or excessive temperatures. Cut to length using mechanical means.

Grout fittings and ducts: Protect from collapse and other damage. Prevent ingress from concrete slurry.

Protection: Make sure tendons are not displaced by heavy and prolonged vibration, the pressure of the concrete being placed, workmen or construction traffic.

Slab marking: If there is possibility for future slab penetrations, mark the tendon locations, either on the slab surface or the soffit.

Tendon installation record: Provide details of the following:

- Date.
- Strand source.
- Coil number.
- Heat or cast number.
- Anchorage, duct and wedge batch numbers.
- Operator and supervisor names.
- Locations products are installed.
- Drawing number and revision.

Grout openings

Provision: Provide grout openings, vents and drain holes as documented, including at each end, and at high points except where the tendon curvature is small and the tendon is relatively level.

Gauges and jacks

General: To AS 1349 (1986).

Accuracy: Use equipment capable of establishing loads within 3% accuracy.

Calibration period: Calibrate gauges and jacks at intervals not exceeding 100 operations or 6 months, whichever is earlier, or if any inaccuracy in the gauges is suspected.

Sets: Calibrate and use jacks and gauges as a set.

Stressing

Requirement: To the approved SWMS.

Tensioning: To AS 3600 (2018) clause 17.3.4.5.

Stressing procedure: Carry out stressing after early age test results indicate concrete has attained the required strength.

Stressing stages: As documented.

Marking: Mark strands after wedges are installed and before initial stress.

Slip: Check markings whilst stressing to make sure there is no slip of strands.

Non-conformance: If the difference between theoretical and measured extensions is greater than 10%, provide an explanation of the cause.

Cutting tendons: Do not cut tendons until the actual extensions are approved.

Re-stress or de-stress: Adjust stress in tendons if necessary, after the theoretical and site extensions have been compared.

Post-tensioning stressing schedule: Provide a stressing schedule, including the following information.

- Date.
- Early age concrete compressive strength results.
- Operator and supervisor names.
- Equipment calibration date, including the identification number of dynamometers, gauges, pumps and jacks.
- Tendon identification.
- Initial and final stressing force (or pressure).
- Theoretical and actual extensions for each stressing stage.

- Non-conformance including tendon breakage.
- Drawing number and revision.

Grouting

Grout mixing and preparation: To AS 3600 (2018) clause 17.1.8.2 or to the manufacturer's recommendations for prebagged grout. Use grout as soon as possible and within 45 minutes of adding cement to mixing water.

Ambient air temperature: Do not grout, if the surrounding air temperature is lower or expected to be lower than 5°C.

Timing: Grout tendons as soon as practicable after stressing and within the time limits applicable to the atmospheric corrosivity category, as documented:

- C1 or C2: Three weeks.
- C3: Two weeks.
- C4: One week.
- C5 or CX: Seek specialist advice.

Exterior and interior corrosivity categories: To **CORROSION RESISTANCE**, **Atmospheric corrosivity category** in *0171 General requirements*.

Equipment: Do not use manually powered grouting machines.

Procedure: Prevent damage to grout vents and fittings during grouting. Completely fill the duct during grouting. Inject grout into voids between tendons, ducts and anchorages, until grout flows from vents without air bubbles. Close vents as they fill, progressively in the direction of flow. If there is a blockage or interruption, completely flush grout from the duct using water.

Grout caps: Provide at each anchorage and seal for grouting and venting operations.

Post-tensioning grouting record: For each duct grouted, provide the following:

- Date and time.
- Composition of the grout (water:cement ratio, admixtures) and batch numbers.
- Ambient temperature.
- Operator and supervisor names.
- Duct and tendon identification.
- Grout properties.
- Details of grouting interruptions including pumping or supply interruptions, blockages or loss of grout.

Protection

Grout ducts: Do not subject grouted ducts to shock, vibration, construction traffic or similar loads until 24 hours after completion of grouting.

Permanent protection

Tendons and anchorages: On completion of stressing and grouting, permanently protect anchorage and tendons. Provide at least 40 mm of cover over the cut tendons when the recesses are concreted. Keep anchorages free of foreign matter (rust, grease, oil, paint).

3.5 CONCRETE SUPPLY

Elapsed delivery time

General: Make sure that the elapsed time between the wetting of the mix and the discharge of the mix at the site is in conformance with the **Elapsed delivery time table**. Do not discharge at ambient temperature below 10°C or above 30°C unless approved heating or cooling measures are taken to deliver concrete within the range 5°C to 35°C.

Elapsed delivery time table

Concrete temperature at time of discharge (°C)	Maximum elapsed time (minutes)
5 – 24	120
24 – 27	90
27 – 30	60
30 – 35	45

Pre-mixed supply

Addition of water: To AS 1379 (2007) clause 4.2.3.

Transport method: Select to prevent segregation, loss of material and contamination of the environment, and not to adversely affect placing or compaction.

Site mixed supply

Emergencies: If mixing by hand, provide details.

Plant: Mix concrete in a plant located on the construction site.

3.6 TESTING

General

Reports and records of test results: To the relevant parts of the AS 1012 series. Keep results on site.

Assessment process of test results

Standard: To AS 1379 (2007).

Method of assessment: Project assessment.

Sampling

Sampling method: To AS 1012.1 (2014).

Sampling locations: To AS 1012.1 (2014) and the following:

- Slump and spread tests: On site, at the point of discharge from the agitator.
- Compressive strength tests: Spread the site sampling evenly throughout the pour.

Sampling frequency: To AS 1379 (2007) Sections 5 and 6 and the following:

- Slump and spread tests: Take at least one sample from each batch.
- Compressive strength tests: To the **Project assessment strength grade sampling table**.

Project assessment strength grade sampling table

Number of batches for each type and grade of concrete per day	Minimum number of samples per batch: Columns and load bearing wall elements	Minimum number of samples per day: Other elements
1	1	1
2-5	1	2
6-10	1	3
11-20	1	4
each additional 10	1	1 additional

Making and curing of specimens

General: To AS 1012.8.1 (2014), AS 1012.8.2 (2014) and AS 1012.8.4 (2015).

Test methods

General: To the relevant parts of the AS 1012 series.

Compressive strength: To AS 1012.9 (2014).

Flexural strength: To AS 1012.11 (2000).

Acceptance criteria:

- Concrete properties: As documented.
- Early age compressive strength: As documented.

Drying shrinkage at 56 days: To AS 1012.13 (2015).

Other concrete properties: As documented.

Early age concrete compressive strength for post-tensioning

Sampling frequency: For each post-tensioned element, take at least 3 samples for testing at the age of each intended stage of stressing plus at least 3 reserve samples. Take at least one sample every 2 batches.

Sampling locations: Distribute sampling locations randomly, include anchorage areas and the final concrete placement area. Reference the structural element from which the sample is taken.

Making and curing of specimens: To AS 1012.8.1 (2014) and the following:

- Site cure all test cylinders for early age testing.
- For slab samples, maintain exposure to the same weather and temperature by curing the samples on the adjacent deck.
- Retain test cylinders on site until the morning of the test.

Grout properties

Fluidity: To ASTM C939/C939M (2022) for each grout batch.

Bleeding and early expansion: To ASTM C940 (2022), modified to simulate the wicking of strands and tested once every 20 m^3.

Compressive strength: To AS 1478.2 (2005) at a frequency of 3 cubes per grouting session.

Liquid retaining structures

Testing for liquid tightness: To AS 3735 (2001) Section 7.

Slip resistance tests

Slip resistance of completed installation: To AS 4663 (2013).

3.7 CORES, FIXINGS AND EMBEDDED ITEMS

General

Requirement: Install fasteners to manufacturer's recommendations and the assumptions of AS 5216 (2021) Appendix G.

Adjoining elements

Fixings: Provide fixings for adjoining elements. If required, provide temporary support to the adjoining elements during concreting, to prevent movement.

Protection

General: Protect embedded and projecting items against damage.

Compatibility: Provide inserts, fixings and embedded items that are compatible with each other, with the reinforcement and with the documented concrete mix and surface finish.

Corrosion protection: In external or exposed locations, galvanize anchor bolts and embedded fixings as follows:

- All threaded products: To AS/NZS 1214 (2016).
- All non-threaded products: To AS/NZS 4680 (2006).

Grease: Grease threads that will project from the concrete.

Structural integrity

Position: Fix cores and embedded items to prevent movement during concrete placement. In locating cores, fixings and embedded items, displace but do not cut reinforcement, and maintain documented cover to reinforcement.

Isolation: Isolate embedded items to prevent water tracking to concrete that provides minimum cover to reinforcement.

Tolerances

General: Maximum deviation from correct positions:

- Anchor bolt groups for structural steel: To AS/NZS 5131 (2016) Appendix F.
- Cores and embedded items generally: 10 mm.
- Other fixing bolts: 3 mm.

3.8 CONCRETE WORKING BASE

Finish

Membrane support: Wood float finish or equivalent.

Installation

General: Lay over the base or subgrade and screed to the required level.

Surface flatness tolerance

Maximum deviation: 6 mm from a 3 m straightedge.

3.9 PLACING AND COMPACTION

Preparation

Cleaning: Before placing concrete, remove free water, dust, debris and stains from the form face and the formed space.

Placing

Horizontal transport:

- Use suitable conveyors, clean chutes, troughs, hoppers or pipes.
- Minimise jolting and vibration of concrete whilst transporting around site.
- Discharge vertically in a controlled manner into forms or further distribution equipment.

Methods: Avoid segregation and loss of concrete, and minimise plastic settlement. Maintain a nominally vertical and plastic concrete edge during placement.

Horizontal elements: Place concrete in layers not more than 300 mm thick. Compact the following layer into previous layer before previous layer has taken initial set.

Vertical elements: Limit the free fall of concrete to maximum of 2 m.

Fibre-reinforced concrete: For pumped concrete, use a 100 to 150 mm mesh screen on the pump hopper to catch fibre balls.

Reinforcement: Maintain the documented concrete cover to reinforcement.

Compaction

Methods: Use immersion and screed vibrators accompanied by hand methods as appropriate to remove entrapped air and to fully compact the mix.

Vibrators: Do not allow vibrators to contact set concrete, reinforcement or items embedded in concrete including pipes and conduits. Do not use vibrators to move concrete along the formwork. Avoid causing segregation by over-vibration.

Placing records

Logbook: Keep on site and make available for inspection a logbook recording each placement of concrete, including the following:

- Date.
- Specified grade and source of concrete.
- Slump measurements.
- The portion of work.
- Volume placed.

Rain

Protection: During placement and before setting, protect the surface from damage.

Time between adjacent placements

Minimum time delay: As documented.

Placing in cold weather

Cement: Do not use high alumina cement.

Temperature limits: Maintain the following:

- Freshly mixed concrete: ≥ 5°C.
- Forms and reinforcement before and during placing: ≥ 5°C.
- Water: Maximum 60°C when placed in the mixer.

High early strength cement: If deteriorating weather conditions are predicted, use high early strength cement.

Temperature control: Heat the concrete materials, other than cement, to the minimum temperature necessary so that the temperature of the placed concrete is ≥ 5°C.

Admixtures: Do not use calcium chloride, salts, chemicals or other material in the mix to lower the freezing point of the concrete.

Frozen materials: Do not allow frozen materials or materials containing ice to enter the mixer, and keep forms, materials, and equipment coming in contact with the concrete free of frost and ice.

Freezing: Prevent concrete from freezing.

Placing in hot weather

Requirement: Prevent premature stiffening of the fresh mix and reduce water absorption and evaporation losses.

Evaporation control barriers: Erect barriers to protect freshly placed concrete from drying winds.

Evaporation rate limit: ≤ 0.50 kg/m^2/h.

Temperature control: Select one or more of the following methods to make sure the temperature of the concrete mix does not exceed 35°C:

- Cool the concrete using liquid nitrogen injection before placing.
- Cover horizontal transport containers.
- Forms and reinforcement before and during placing: ≤ 35°C.
- Spray the coarse aggregate using cold water before mixing.
- Use chilled mixing water.

Placing under water

General: Do not place under water unless conditions prevent dewatering.

3.10 JOINTS

Construction joints

Location: Do not relocate or eliminate construction joints, or form undocumented construction joints. If emergency construction joints are made necessary by unforeseen interruptions to the concrete pour, prepare a report on the action taken.

Finish: Butt join the surfaces of adjoining pours. In visually important surfaces, make the joint straight and true, and free from blemishes impermissible for its surface finish class.

Joint preparation: Scabble hardened concrete joint surface to a minimum 3 mm amplitude. Do not damage projecting reinforcing steel. Remove loose or soft material, foreign matter and laitance. Dampen the surface just before placing the fresh concrete and coat with a neat cement slurry.

Expansion and isolation joints

Expansion joint dowels: Make sure the location and alignment of installed dowels match the documented requirements. Make sure dowels are not displaced during concrete placement.

Bond breaking: Provide back-up materials for sealants, including backing rods, which do not adhere to the sealant.

Preparation: Before filling, dry and clean the joint surfaces, and prime.

Joint filling: Fill with jointing materials as documented. Finish visible jointing material neatly, flush with adjoining surfaces.

Watertightness: Apply the jointing material so that joints subject to ingress of water are made watertight.

Slip joints

General: Provide slip joints, as documented.

Requirement: If concrete slabs are supported on masonry, provide proprietary slip joints.

Slab-on-grade control joints

General: Provide control joints, as documented.

Tooled and sawn joints: Form joints within the concrete surface with either a grooving tool or a mechanical circular saw.

Timing: Form joints as early as possible after placement of concrete. Make sure the concrete has hardened sufficiently to prevent dislodging aggregate.

Joint width: 3 to 5 mm wide.

Joint depth: A minimum of (0.25 - 0.33) x depth of the concrete.

3.11 SURFACE MODIFIERS

General

Application: Apply to clean surfaces, to the manufacturer’s recommendations.

3.12 FORMED SURFACES

General

Surface finish: To AS 3610.1 (2018) Table 3.3.3.1 and as documented.

Damage: Do not strip formwork prematurely if damage to the concrete may be caused.

Curing

Requirement: If formwork is stripped before the minimum curing period for the concrete has elapsed, continue curing the exposed faces as soon as the stripping is completed, and within an hour of exposure.

Evaluation of formed surfaces

General: If evaluation of a formed surface is required, complete the evaluation before surface treatment.

Finishing methods

Requirement: If soffits of horizontal concrete elements or faces of vertical concrete elements are to have a finish other than an off-form finish, provide finishes as documented.

Form removal: If vertical face formwork needs to be removed for finishing methods while the concrete is green, make sure the concrete has sufficiently set to prevent slump.

Blasted finishes:

- Abrasive: Blast the cured surface using hard, sharp graded abrasive particles until the coarse aggregate is in uniform relief.
- Light abrasive: Blast the cured surface using hard, sharp graded abrasive particles to provide a uniform matt finish without exposing the coarse aggregate.

Bush hammered finish: Remove the minimum matrix using bush hammering to expose the coarse aggregate, recessing the matrix no deeper than half the aggregate size, to give a uniform texture.

Exposed aggregate finish: While the concrete is green, wet the surface and scrub with stiff fibre or wire brushes, flushing continuously with clean water, until the aggregate is uniformly exposed. Do not use acid etching. Rinse the surface with water.

Floated finishes:

- Sand floated finish: While the concrete is green, wet the surface and rub using a wood float. Rub fine sand into the surface until a uniform colour and texture is produced.
- Grout floated finish: While the concrete is green, dampen the surface and spread a slurry, using hessian pads or sponge rubber floats. Remove surplus slurry and work until a uniform colour and texture is produced.

Smooth rubbed finish: While the concrete is green, wet the surface and rub using a carborundum or similar abrasive brick until a uniform colour and texture is produced.

3.13 UNFORMED SURFACES

General

Surface finish: As documented.

Finished levels: Strike off, screed and level slab surfaces to finished levels and to the flatness tolerance class documented.

Finishing methods – primary finish

Machine float finish:

- After levelling, consolidate the surface using a machine float.
- Cut and fill and refloat immediately to a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
- Hand float in locations inaccessible to the machine float.

Steel trowel finish: After machine floating, finish as follows:

- Use power or hand steel trowels to produce a smooth surface relatively free from defects.
- When the surface has hardened sufficiently, re-trowel to produce the final consolidated finish free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance.

Burnished finish: Continue steel trowelling until the concrete surface attains a polished or glossy finish, uniform in texture and appearance, and free of trowel marks and defects.

Wood float finish: After machine floating, use wood or plastic hand floats to produce the final consolidated finish free of float marks and uniform in texture and appearance.

Broom finish: After machine floating and steel trowelling use a broom or hessian belt drawn across the surface to produce a coarse even-textured transverse-scored surface.

Scored or scratched finish: After screeding, use a stiff brush or rake drawn across the surface before final set to produce a coarse scored texture.

Sponge finish: After machine floating and steel trowelling, use a damp sponge to wipe the surface to produce an even textured sand finish.

Exposed aggregate finish: After floating and when concrete has stiffened, wet the surface and scrub with stiff fibre or wire brushes, flushing continuously with clean water, until the aggregate is uniformly exposed. Rinse the surface with water.

Finishing methods – supplementary finish

Abrasive blast: After steel trowelling, abrasive blast the cured surface to provide texture or to form patterns without exposing the coarse aggregate, using hard, sharp graded abrasive particles.

Coloured applied finish: After machine floating, apply a proprietary liquid or dry shake material to the manufacturer's recommendations and trowel to achieve the required appearance.

Stamped and coloured pattern finish: Provide a proprietary finishing system.

Polished finish: After steel trowelling, grind the cured surface of the concrete.

3.14 CURING

General

Requirements: Take into account the average ambient temperature at site over the relevant period affecting the curing and adopt procedures to make sure of the following:

- Curing: Cure continuously from completion of finishing, when the concrete has set sufficiently not to be damaged by the curing process.

- Minimum curing period: Total cumulative number of days or fractions of days, during which the air temperature in contact with the concrete is above 10°C, conforms to AS 3600 (2018) clause 17.1.5 and the following, unless accelerated curing is adopted:
  - . Fully enclosed internal surfaces/Early age strength concrete: 3 days.
  - . Other concrete surfaces: 7 days.
- End of curing period: Prevent rapid drying out at the end of the curing period.
- Protection: Maintain at a reasonably constant temperature with minimum moisture loss, during the curing period.

Curing method: [complete/delete]

Curing compounds

Liquid membrane-forming compounds: Provide a uniform continuous flexible coating without visible breaks or pinholes, which remains unbroken for at least the required curing period after application.

Substrates: Do not use wax-based or chlorinated rubber-based curing compounds on surfaces forming substrates to applied finishes, concrete toppings and cement-based render.

Self-levelling toppings: If also used as curing compounds, conform to AS 3799 (1998).

Visually important surfaces: Apply curing compounds to produce uniform colour on adjacent surfaces.

Water curing

Method: Select a method of ponding or continuous sprinkling that does not damage the concrete surface during the required curing period.

Wet hessian curing

Method: Place wet hessian sheets/bags over concrete surface. Keep hessian wet during the required curing period by regularly sprinkling with water. Protect from wind and traffic.

Impermeable sheet curing

Method: Place impermeable sheets, to ASTM C171 (2020), over concrete surface. Anchor down and tape joints in material to retain concrete moisture. Keep the concrete surface covered for the required curing period.

Cold weather curing

Temperature: Maintain concrete surface temperatures above 5°C for the duration of the curing period.

Hot weather curing

Requirement: If the concrete temperature exceeds 25°C, or the ambient shade temperature exceeds 30°C, protect from drying winds and sun by using an evaporative retarder until curing has commenced.

3.15 COMPLETION

Early loading

Prohibition: Prepare proposals for the application of any superimposed load (including backfilling), to any part of what will become a load bearing structure, within 21 days of placing concrete. Do not apply superimposed loads unless it can be demonstrated that 95% of the design strength of the concrete has been achieved.

Formwork removal

Extent: Remove formwork, other than permanent forms and trapped forms, including formwork in concealed locations.

Timing: Do not disturb formwork until concrete has reached sufficient hardness to withstand formwork movements and removal without damage.

Stripping:

- General: To AS 3600 (2018) where it is more stringent than AS 3610.1 (2018) and AS 3610.2 (Int) (2023).
- Vertical formwork: To AS 3610.1 (2018) Appendix C Table C2.
- Multi-storey work: Remove formwork without disturbing props supporting succeeding floors.
- Post-tensioned concrete: Remove formwork supporting post-tensioned concrete members to AS 3600 (2018) clause 17.6.2.7.

Removable bolts: Remove tie bolts without damaging the concrete.

Bolt hole filling: Provide material with durability and colour matching the concrete.

Recessed filling: Fill or plug the hole to 6 mm below the finished surface.

Curing: If formwork is stripped before the minimum curing period for the concrete has elapsed, continue curing the exposed faces as soon as the stripping is completed, within an hour of exposure.

Protection

General: Protect the concrete from damage due to construction loads, physical and thermal shock, and excessive vibration, particularly during the curing perio**d.**The codes in the header row of the schedule designate each application or location of the item scheduled. Edit the codes to match those in other contract documents.

0331 BRICK AND BLOCK CONSTRUCTION

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide brick and block construction, as documented.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 STANDARDS

General

Materials and construction: To AS 3700 (2018).

1.4 INTERPRETATION

Definitions

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the definitions in AS 3700 (2018) clause 1.5.2, AS/NZS 4455.1 (2008) clause 1.4 and the following apply:

- Facework: Masonry intended to be exposed in a wall.
- Special mortar: Mortar with compositions not covered in AS 3700 (2018) Table 11.1.

1.5 TOLERANCES

General

Requirement: To AS 3700 (2018) clause 12.5 and Table 12.1.

1.6 SUBMISSIONS

Fire performance

Fire-resistance level: Submit evidence of conformity to PRODUCTS, **FIRE PERFORMANCE**, **Fire-resistance of building elements**.

Products and materials

Type tests: Submit results, as follows:

- Characteristic unconfined compressive strength of masonry unit: To AS/NZS 4456.4 (2003).

Samples

Requirement: Submit samples to PRODUCTS, **GENERAL**, **Samples**.

Tests

Site tests: Submit results for special mortar and masonry as follows:

- Characteristic compressive strength.
- Characteristic flexural tensile strength.
- Scratch index for mortar joints.

Warranties

Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Warranties**.

1.7 INSPECTION

Notice

Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:

- Set-out.
- Structural steelwork, including bolts and shelf angles, in position.
- Unit type, colour and texture.
- Bottoms of cavities, after cleaning out.

- Bottoms of core holes, before grouting.
- Reinforcement type and diameter.
- Positioning of reinforcement before grouting.
- Control joints, ready for insertion of joint filler.
- Damp-proof courses, in position.
- Flashings, in position.
- Lintels, in position.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Samples

Requirement: Provide samples, as follows:

- Each type of face unit, showing the range of variation available, including colour, texture, surface irregularities, defective arrises, and shape.
  . Number of each type: 6.
- 2 kg sample of each type of sand required to be of a particular colour, grade or source.
- Each type of sealant, showing the finished colour.
  . Quantity: Minimum two of each colour.

Sample panel: Provide a sample panel for each type of facework, including face or pointing mortar and a finished vertical control joint in a suitable location.

- Size: Minimum 1200 mm high x 1190 mm or closest unit module long.

2.2 FIRE PERFORMANCE

Fire-resistance of building elements

Fire-resistance level: Tested to AS 1530.4 (2014).

2.3 DURABILITY

General

Exposure locations: To AS 3700 (2018) clause 5.4.

2.4 MATERIALS

Masonry units

Selections: As documented.

Standard: To AS/NZS 4455.1 (2008) and AS/NZS 4455.3 (2008).

Salt attack resistance grade: To AS 3700 (2018) Table 5.1.

Minimum age of clay bricks: 7 days.

Mortar materials

Mortar class: To AS 3700 (2018) Table 5.1.

Cement: To AS 3972 (2010).

White cement: With not more than 1% iron salts content.

Lime: To AS 1672.1 (1997).

Sand: Fine aggregate with a low clay content, free from efflorescing salts and deleterious matter, selected for colour and grading.

Water: Clean and free from any deleterious matter.

Admixtures: To AS 3700 (2018) clause 11.4.2.4.

Pigment: To EN 12878 (2014), and as follows:

- Integral pigment mix proportion: Not more than 10% by weight of cement.

Masonry cement mortar mix proportions table (cement:lime:sand), by volume

Mortar class to AS 3700 (2018)	Clay	Concrete	Calcium silicate	Water thickener
M3	1:0:4	1:0:4	N/A	Yes

Mortar class to AS 3700 (2018)	Clay	Concrete	Calcium silicate	Water thickener
M4	1:0:3	N/A	N/A	Yes

Cement (GP/GB) mortar mix proportions table (cement:lime:sand), by volume

Mortar class to AS 3700 (2018)	Clay	Concrete	Calcium silicate	Water thickener
M2	1:2:9	N/A	N/A	No
M3	1:1:6	1:1:6	N/A	Optional
M3	1:0:5	1:0:5	1:0:5	Yes
M4	1:0.5:4.5	1:0.5:4.5	N/A	Optional
M4	1:0:4	1:0:4	1:0:4	Yes
M4	1:0-0.25:3	1:0-0.25:3	N/A	Optional

Grout

Standard: To AS 3700 (2018) clause 11.7.

Maximum aggregate size: 12 mm.

Minimum cement content: 300 kg/m^3.

Characteristic compressive strength: Minimum 12 MPa.

Nominal slump: 200 mm.

2.5 BUILT-IN COMPONENTS

General

Durability class of built-in components: To AS 3700 (2018) Table 5.1.

Steel lintels

Angles and flats: To AS/NZS 3679.1 (2016).

Cold-formed proprietary lintels: Designed to AS/NZS 4600 (2018).

Corrosion protection: To AS 2699.3 (2020).

Cutting: Do not cut after galvanizing.

Reinforcement

Standard: To AS/NZS 4671 (2019).

Corrosion protection: To AS 3700 (2018) clause 5.9.

Minimum cover: To AS 3700 (2018) Table 5.1.

Wall ties

Standard: To AS 2699.1 (2020).

Type: A.

Corrosion protection: To AS 2699.1 (2020).

Connectors and accessories

Standard: To AS 2699.2 (2020).

Corrosion protection: To AS 2699.2 (2020).

Flashings and damp-proof courses

Standard: To AS/NZS 2904 (1995).

Slip joints

Standard: To AS 3700 (2018) clause 4.14.

Air vents

Blockwork: Select from the following:

- Concrete framed: Bronze wire mesh in concrete frame, 390 x 190 mm.
- Vent blocks: Purpose-made vent blocks.

Brickwork: Select from the following:

- Concrete framed: Bronze wire mesh in concrete frame, 455 x 160 mm.

- Cut brick: Two cut bricks laid vertically and evenly spaced in a 230 mm wide x two course high opening, backed with bronze wire mesh built in.
- Terracotta: Perforated, 230 x 160 mm.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

Mortar mixing

General: Measure volumes accurately to the documented proportions. Machine mix for at least six minutes. If the initial set of the cement has taken place, discard the mortar. Do not retemper.

Storage and handling

Masonry units: Store above the surface of the ground and cover to prevent entry of rainwater and contaminants. Locate away from surface and ground water runoff.

Mortar materials: Protect from contamination and as follows:

- Sand: Store away from surface and ground water runoff and allow for free drainage of rainwater.
- Cement and lime: Store bags in a dry, under cover and above ground environment.

Bond

Type: Stretcher bond.

Building in

Embedded items: Build in wall ties and accessories as the construction proceeds. If not practicable to obtain the required embedment within the mortar joint in cored or hollow masonry units, fill appropriate cores with grout or mortar.

Steel door frames: Fill the backs of jambs and heads solid with mortar as the work proceeds.

Minimum clearance for timber frame shrinkage

General: In timber framed masonry veneer construction, provide clearances to allow for long-term shrinkage of timber including at windows, doors, thresholds, at the underside of eaves where the masonry and soffit meet and as follows:

- Single storey (slab on ground): 10 mm.
- Two storey (slab at ground floor): 32 mm
- Additional clearance: Accommodate additional shrinkage of unseasoned floor timbers.

Monolithic structural action

Construction at different rates or times: If two or more adjoining sections of masonry, including intersecting walls, are constructed at different rates or times, rake back or tie the intersections between those sections to obtain monolithic structural action in the completed work.

Header units: Except in stretcher bond facework, provide masonry header units, to AS 3700 (2018) clause 4.11.2 and as follows:

- Spacing: 600 mm maximum.
- Location: Provide header units in the following locations:
  . At engaged piers.
  . At engagement of diaphragms with the leaves in diaphragm walls.
  . At intersections of flanges with shear walls.
  . At intersections with supporting walls and buttresses.
  . Between leaves in solid masonry construction.

Joining to existing

General: Provide a control joint where joining to existing structures. Do not tooth new masonry into existing work unless approved by a professional engineer.

Mortar joints

General: Set out masonry with joints of uniform width and minimum cutting of masonry units.

Solid and cored units: Lay on a full bed of mortar. Fill perpends solid. Cut mortar flush.

Hollow units: Face-shell bedded. Fill perpends solid. Cut mortar flush.

Joint thickness: 10 mm.

Finish: Conform to the following:

- Externally: Tool to give a dense water-shedding finish.

- Internally: If wall is to be plastered, do not rake more than 10 mm to give a key.

Rate of construction

General: Regulate the rate of construction to eliminate joint deformation, slumping or instability.

Rods

Set-out: Construct masonry to the following rods:

- 75 mm high units: 7 courses to 600 mm.
- 90 mm high units: 6 courses to 600 mm.
- 190 mm high units: 3 courses to 600 mm.

Temporary support

General: If the final stability of the masonry is dependent on construction of (structural) elements after the masonry is completed, provide proposals for temporary support or bracing.

3.2 FACEWORK

Cleaning

General: Clean progressively as the work proceeds to remove mortar smears, stains and discolouration. Do not erode joints if using pressure spraying.

Colour mixing

Distribution: In facework, distribute the colour range of units evenly to prevent colour concentrations and banding.

Below ground

Facework: Commence facework at least one full course for blockwork, or two full courses for brickwork, below the adjacent finished surface level.

Double face walls

Selection: Select face units for uniform width and double-face qualities in single-leaf masonry with facework both sides.

Preferred face: Before starting, obtain approval of the preferred wall face, and favour that face should a compromise be unavoidable.

Perpends

General: If other than vertically aligned perpends in alternate courses are proposed, provide details.

Sills and thresholds

General: Solidly bed sills and thresholds and lay them with the top surfaces draining away from the building.

Minimum size of cut unit: Three quarters full width.

3.3 SUBFLOOR WORK

Access openings

General: In internal walls, provide door-width openings beneath doorways to give access to underfloor areas.

Air vent locations

Minimum subfloor openings and ground clearance: To BCA (2022) F1D8.

Cavity walls: Provide matching vents in the internal leaves located as near as practicable to the vents in the external leaves.

Location: Below damp-proof course to internal and external walls.

Underpinning

Requirement: Install underpinning, without causing damage to the building.

Grouting: Pack dry mix M4 mortar between the top of the underpinning and the underside of the existing structure at the completion of each panel of underpinning.

3.4 CAVITY WORK

Cavity clearance

General: Keep cavities clear at all times.

Cavity fill

General: Fill the cavity with mortar to one course above the adjacent finished (ground) level. Fall the top surface towards the outer leaf.

Cavity width

General: Minimum 40 mm for cavity masonry walls and masonry veneer walls, in conformance with AS 3700 (2018) clause 4.7.1.

Openings
Jambs of external openings: Do not close the cavity.

Wall ties, connectors and accessories
Protection: Install to prevent water passing across the cavity.

3.5 DAMP-PROOF COURSES

Location
General: Locate damp-proof courses, as follows:

- Timber floors: In the first course below the level of the underside of ground floor timbers in internal walls and inner leaves of cavity walls.
- Cavity walls built off slabs on ground: In the bottom course of the outer leaf, continuous horizontally across the cavity and up the inner face bedded in mortar, turned 30 mm into the inner leaf one course above. Project 10 mm beyond the external slab edge and turn down at 45°.
- Internal walls built off slabs on ground: In the first course above floor level.
- Masonry veneer construction built off slabs on ground: In the bottom course of the outer leaf, continuous horizontally across the cavity. Fasten to the inner frame 75 mm above floor level.
- Walls adjoining infill floor slabs on membranes: In the course above the underside of the slab in internal walls and inner leaves of cavity walls. Project 40 mm and dress down over the membrane turned up against the wall.

Height: Not less than:

- 150 mm above the adjacent finished ground level.
- 75 mm above the finished paved or concrete areas that slope away from the wall.
- 50 mm above the finished paved or concreted areas that slope away from the wall and are protected from the direct effect of the weather.

Installation
General: Lay in long lengths. Sandwich damp-proof courses between mortar.

Joints: Locate away from weepholes.

Junctions: Preserve continuity of damp-proofing at junctions of damp-proof courses and waterproof membranes.

Laps: Lap full width at angles and intersections and at least 150 mm at joints.

Lap sealing: Seal with a bituminous adhesive and sealing compound.

Steps: Step as necessary, but not exceeding two courses per step for brickwork and one course per step for blockwork.

3.6 FLASHINGS

Location
General: Locate flashings, as follows:

- Floors: Full width of outer leaf immediately above slab or shelf angle, continuous across cavity and up the inner face bedded in mortar, turned 30 mm into the inner leaf two courses above for brick and one course above for block. If the slab supports the outer skin and is not rebated, bed the flashing in a suitable sealant.
- Under sills: 30 mm into the outer leaf bed joint one course below the sill, extending up across the cavity and under the sill in the inner leaf or the frame for masonry veneer. Extend at least 150 mm beyond the reveals or each side of the opening.
- Over lintels to openings in cavity walls: Full width of outer leaf immediately above the lintel, continuous across cavity, turned 30 mm into the inner leaf two courses above for brick and one course above for block or turned up at least 150 mm against the inner frame and fastened to it. Extend at least 150 mm beyond the lintels.
- At abutments with structural frames or supports: Vertically flash in the cavity using 150 mm wide material, wedged and grouted into a groove in the frame opposite the cavity.
- At jambs: Vertically flash jamb, extending 75 mm into the cavity, interleaved with the sill and head flashing at each end. Fix to jambs.
- At roof abutments with cavity walls: Cavity flash immediately above the roof and over-flash the roof apron flashing.

Installation
General: Sandwich flashings between mortar except where on lintels or shelf angles. Bed flashings, sills and copings in one operation to maximise adhesion.

Laps: If required, lap full width at angles and intersections and at least 150 mm at joints.

Lap sealing: Seal with a bituminous adhesive and sealing compound.

Pointing: Point up joints around flashings, filling voids.

Steps: Step as necessary, but not exceeding two courses per step for brickwork and one course per step for blockwork.

Weepholes

Requirement: Locate weepholes to external leaves of cavity walls in the course immediately above flashings, and cavity fill, and at the bottoms of unfilled cavities.

Form: Open perpends.

Maximum spacing: 1200 mm.

Weephole guards: Provide insect barrier.

3.7 WALL TIES

Location

General: Space wall ties in conformance with AS 3700 (2018) clause 4.10 and at the following locations:

- Not more than 600 mm in each direction.
- Within 300 mm from the line of horizontal or vertical lateral supports, control joints or the perimeter of openings.

Installation

Embedment: At least 50 mm into mortar. Provide at least 15 mm of mortar cover to any exposed surface.

Fixing of masonry veneer ties:

- To timber frames: Screw fix to outer or side face of timber frames with fasteners to AS 3566.1 (2002).
- To concrete: Masonry anchors.
- To steel frames: Screw fix to outer or side face of steel members with fasteners to AS 3566.1 (2002).

3.8 CONTROL JOINTS

General

Location and spacing: Provide control joints to AS 3700 (2018) clause 4.8.

Control joint filling

Filler material: Provide compatible sealant and bond breaking backing materials that are non-staining to masonry. Do not use bituminous materials with absorbent masonry units.

- Bond breaking materials: Non-adhesive to sealant, or faced with a non-adhering material.
- Foamed materials: Closed cell or impregnated, not water-absorbing.

Installation: Clean the joints thoroughly and insert an easily compressible backing material before filling with a gun-applied flexible sealant.

Sealant joint depth to width ratio (depth:width): 1:2.

Minimum sealant depth: 6 mm.

Fire-resisting control joints

General: If a control joint is located in an element of construction required to have a fire-resistance level (FRL), construct the control joint with fire-stopping materials that maintain the FRL of the element.

Fire-stopping: To AS 4072.1 (2005).

3.9 BRICKWORK AND BLOCKWORK DUCT RISERS

General

Location: Build a one-piece corrosion-resistant metal tray to the masonry duct risers at roof level to shed water from the duct above roof flashing level.

Installation

General: Cut an opening for the riser. Turn tray edges up 25 mm around the opening, 13 mm clear of the walls. Externally turn the tray up 100 mm under the stepped flashing and down 100 mm over the apron flashing. Lap and solder joints.

Weepholes

General: Provide two weepholes through the masonry duct riser walls on opposite sides immediately above the tray.

3.10 BED JOINT REINFORCEMENT

Location

Stack bonded masonry: Conform to AS 3700 (2018) clause 4.12 and the following:

- Spaced vertically at centres not exceeding six times the thickness of the stack bonded leaf.
- In the first bed joint above or below an unrestrained horizontal edge of the masonry.
- One bed joint minimum, within 300 mm above or below a horizontal line of lateral support.

Installation

General: Lap 450 mm at splices. Fold and bend at corners so that the longitudinal wires are continuous. Stop 50 mm short of control joints. Extend 450 mm beyond each side of openings.

Reinforcement

Material: Galvanized welded wire mesh.

Width: Equal to the width of the leaf, less 15 mm cover from each exposed surface of the mortar joint.

3.11 REINFORCED AND GROUTED BLOCKWORK

Reinforcement

Cover: Maintain cover to vertical and horizontal steel reinforcement using plastic clips or wheels, as appropriate.

Vertical reinforcement: Tie vertical steel reinforcement to the starter bars through cleanout holes in each reinforced hollow masonry unit and fix in position at the top of the wall with plastic clips.

Horizontal: Lay horizontal steel reinforcement in contact with rebated webs. Hold in position using plastic clips if vertical steel is subsequently positioned to wall construction.

Cleaning core holes

General: Provide purpose-made cleanout blocks or machine cut a cleaning hole at the base of each grouted core.

Location: Locate on the side of the wall that is to be rendered or otherwise concealed.

Cleaning: Rod cores to dislodge mortar fins protruding from the blocks and mortar droppings from reinforcement. Remove through the clean-out blocks.

Grouting

Commencement: Do not commence until grout spaces have been cleaned out and the mortar joints have attained sufficient strength to resist blow-outs.

Height of lift: Limit the height of individual lifts in any pour to make sure that the grout can be thoroughly compacted to fill all voids.

Compaction: Compact by vibration or by rodding.

Topping up: On the completion of the last lift, top up the grout after 10 min and within 30 min, and vibrate or rod to mix with the previous pour.

3.12 LINTELS

Location

General: Install one lintel to each wall leaf, as documented.

Installation

General: Do not cut on site. Keep lintels 10 mm clear of heads of frames.

Steel lintels: Pack mortar between any vertical component and supported masonry units. For angles, install the long leg vertically.

Minimum bearing each end:

- Span not more than 1000 mm: 100 mm.
- Span more than 1000 mm and not more than 3000 mm: 150 mm.
- Span more than 3000 mm: To structural drawings.

Propping: Provide temporary props to lintels to prevent deflection or rotation.

- Minimum propping period: 7 days.

3.13 CONNECTORS AND ACCESSORIES

Slip joints

General: Install slip joints to top of all unreinforced masonry walls supporting concrete slabs and other concrete elements.

Protection: Keep the slip joints in place and protect from displacement.

Flexible masonry ties
General: Install stabilising ties at control joints and abutting structural elements, including columns, beams and slab soffits.

Locations and details: As documented.

3.14 ARCHES

Arch voussoirs
General: Cut units using a masonry saw.

Shapes and dimensions
General: Form arches using solid or cored masonry units.

3.15 BAGGING

Preparation
General: Cut joints flush before bagging.

Dry bagging
Application: Apply laying mortar to the surface using a hessian bag or similar. Flush up irregularities, but leave a minimum amount of mortar on the surface.

Textured bagging
Application: Apply laying mortar to the surface using a sponge float. Flush up irregularities, but leave approximately 2 mm of mortar on the surface. When initial set is reached, texture using a hand bristle brush.

3.16 TESTING

Special mortar
Durability: Scratch index test to AS 3700 (2018) Appendix E.

Compressive strength: To AS 3700 (2018) Appendix C.

Flexural strength: To AS 3700 (2018) Appendix D.

Special masonry
Sampling and testing: To AS 3700 (2018) clause 12.7.

Performance: As documented.

3.17 COMPLETION

4 SELECTIONS

4.1 SCHEDULES

Masonry schedule

	A	B	C
Name or type			
Work size (mm)			
Category			
Air vent units			
Sill units			
Threshold units			
Mortar: Cement			
Mortar: Colour			
Mortar: Mix proportions or mortar class			
Mortar: Sand			
Unit mortar joints: Bond			
Unit mortar joints: Depth (mm)			
Unit mortar joints: Shape or profile			
Grout: Compressive strength (MPa)			

0382 LIGHT TIMBER FRAMING

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide light timber floor, wall and roof framing, as documented.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.
- *0181 Adhesives, sealants and fasteners*.
- *0185 Timber products, finishes and treatment*.

1.3 STANDARDS

General

Framing: To AS 1684.2 (2021), AS 1684.3 (2021) or AS 1684.4 (2010), as appropriate.

Design: To AS 1720.1 (2010).

1.4 INTERPRETATION

Definitions

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the definitions given in the AS 1684 series apply.

1.5 TOLERANCES

Floors

Maximum deviation from a 3 m straightedge laid in any direction on the floor framing: 5 mm.

Wall tolerances table

Property	Permitted deviation
Generally: Verticality in 2 m	1:500
Generally: Flatness[a] in 2 m	3 mm
Features[b]: Verticality in 2 m	1:1000
Features[b]: Horizontality in 2 m	1:1000
a. Flatness: Measured under a straightedge laid in any direction on a surface. b. Features: Conspicuous horizontal or vertical lines including external corners, parapets, reveals, heads, sills.	

1.6 SUBMISSIONS

Certification

Requirement: Submit certification by an appropriately qualified person of the design, documentation and erected work to the AS 1684 series and/or by a professional engineer to AS 1720.1 (2010). Include the following:

- Reactions: Provide location and magnitude of reactions to be accommodated by the support structure. If part of the structure is manufactured by a prefabricator (e.g. roof trusses), provide location and magnitude of reactions and tie down forces.
- Floor, wall and roof frame member sizes: A schedule of proposed member sizes, certified as meeting stated project requirements for spans, spacings, loadings and deflections.
- Species and stress grade.

Products and materials

Supply: Submit supplier's evidence of conformity, which may be included on an invoice or delivery docket, verifying that the timber conforms to the documented requirements.

Inspection: Submit the inspection authority's evidence of conformity verifying that the erected timber frame conforms to the documented requirements.

Moisture content: Submit records of moisture content to AS/NZS 1080.1 (2012).

CCA treated timber: If proposed to be used, submit details.

Shop drawings

General: Submit shop drawings, to a scale that best describes the detail, certified by a professional engineer stating that the design has been carried out to the requirements of the AS 1684 series and AS 1720.1 (2010), for the documented configurations and loadings.

Prefabricated roof trusses: Include the following:

- Marking plans.
- Truss plan layout.
- Elevations, showing the arrangement of members, allowing for the accommodation of in-roof services, and the size and section type of each member.
- Camber of all elements.
- The method of assembly, connection and lifting.
- Location and details of tie down and bracing.

Prefabricated wall frames: Include the following:

- Wall plan, showing all wall layouts.
- Elevations, showing the arrangement of members, and the size and section type of each member.
- The method of assembly, connection and lifting.
- Location and details of tie down and bracing.

Subcontractors

Prefabricated items: Submit the name and contact details of proposed manufacturers, suppliers and installers.

1.7 INSPECTION

Notice

Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:

- Prefabricated units before installation.
- Fabricated items before priming or water-repellent treatment.
- Bolts after final tightening.
- Timber work after erection but before it is covered.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Storage and handling

Handling: Do not distort or damage timber or timber products. Do not mark or stain the surface of architecturally expressed structural elements. Use identified loading and lifting points.

Storage: To manufacturer's specifications and the following:

- Maintain integrity of structural timber and treatments.
- Store architecturally expressed structural elements and elements for internal use under cover.

Moisture content of seasoned timber: Provide protection throughout handling and storage to maintain a moisture content within the targets for seasoned timber (15% maximum) and ideally near the equilibrium moisture content anticipated in service.

Marking

Branding: Brand structural timber, under the authority of a recognised product certification scheme to *0185 Timber products, finishes and treatment* as applicable to the product. Locate the brand mark on faces or edges that will be concealed in the works. Include the following data for timbers not covered by branding provisions in Australian Standards or regulations for which branding is required:

- Stress grade.
- Method of grading.
- If seasoned, the word, SEASONED or DRY, or an abbreviation of seasoned, such as SEAS or S.
- The certification mark of the product certification scheme.
- The applicable standard.

Trusses: Permanently label each truss to show:
- Manufacturer.
- Tag or number with reference to location.
- Support and tie down points.
- Labelling in coordination with installation documentation.

Preservative treatment
Requirement: To *0185 Timber products, finishes and treatment*, including for termite treatments.

2.2 TIMBER

Certification
Requirement: Certification, chain of custody and product labelling to *0185 Timber products, finishes and treatment*.

Fascias and barge boards
Hardwood: To AS 2796.1 (1999).

Seasoned cypress pine: To AS 1810 (1995).

Softwood: To AS 4785.1 (2002).

Trusses
Design: To AS 1720.1 (2010).

Nailplated roof trusses: To AS 1720.5 (2015).

Overhangs: Free from spring or splits.

2.3 LAMINATED VENEER LUMBER AND GLUED LAMINATED TIMBER

Laminated veneer lumber
Standard: To AS/NZS 4357.0 (2022).

Glued laminated timber
Standard: To AS/NZS 1328.1 (1998).

2.4 STRUCTURAL PLYWOOD

General
Standard: To AS/NZS 2269.0 (2012).

Bond: Type A to AS/NZS 2754.1 (2016).

Veneer
Veneer quality to visible surfaces: CD (minimum) to AS/NZS 2269.0 (2012).

2.5 COMPONENTS

Nailplated joined beams
Type: Engineered beam made from stress-graded timber pieces joined together with nailplates.

Mild steel post bases
Embedment: Embed base a minimum of 150 mm into the concrete support and to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Location: To timber posts supported off concrete slabs or footings.

Finish: Galvanized.

Fasteners
Requirement: Conform to *0181 Adhesives, sealants and fasteners.*

CCA treated timber: If in contact with CCA treated timber, provide hot-dip galvanized bolts with plastic sheaths, or bituminous or epoxy coatings to manufacturer's recommendations.

Damp-proof course
Material: To AS/NZS 2904 (1995) or suitable alternative material conforming to NCC (2022) A5G3.

Flashings
Material: To AS/NZS 2904 (1995) or suitable alternative material conforming to NCC (2022) A5G3.

2.6 FINGER JOINTED STRUCTURAL TIMBER

General
Performance: To AS/NZS 8008 (2022).

Adhesive bond performance: To AS/NZS 8008 (2022).

Production: To AS 5068 (2006).

Material requirements: As documented.

2.7 RECONSTITUTED WOOD PRODUCTS

Wet process fibreboard (including hardboard)

Standard: To AS/NZS 1859.4 (2018).

Bending strength: To AS/NZS 1859.4 (2018) Section 7.

Material requirements: As documented.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

Installation

Framing: To the AS 1684 series.

Fastener installation: To *0181 Adhesives, sealants and fasteners*. Do not split or otherwise damage the timber.

3.2 FLOOR FRAMING

Bearers and joists

Levelling: Level bearers and joists by checking or by packing for the full width of the member with dense corrosion-resistant material that is secured in place.

Maximum thickness of packing: 3 mm.

Spring: Lay bearers and joists to allow for straightening under loading.

Joints

Requirement: Locate joints only over supports:

- Minimum bearing of bearers: 50 mm.
- Minimum bearing of joists: 30 mm.

Fixing and restraint

Fixing: Secure bearers and joists to supports to provide restraint against lateral movement.

Deep joists: To AS 1684.2 (2021) clause 4.2.2.3 or AS 1684.3 (2021) clause 4.2.2.3 as appropriate.

Trimmers or blocking dimensions:

- Depth: Joist depth less 25 mm.
- Minimum thickness: 25 mm.

Engineered timber joists: Provide lateral restraint to the manufacturer’s recommendations.

3.3 WALL FRAMING

Bracing

Additional support

Requirement: Provide additional support in the form of noggings, trimmers and studs for fixing lining, cladding, hardware, accessories, fixtures and fittings, as required.

Spacing of noggings: Maximum 1350 mm centres.

Vermin barriers

Requirement: Provide vermin barriers as follows:

- Brick veneer barrier: Close nail 10 mm galvanized steel wire mesh to the underside of the bottom plate of external stud walls, extending across the cavity for building into brickwork.

Damp-proof course

Requirement: Provide damp-proof courses under the bottom plate of stud walls built off slabs or masonry dwarf walls, as documented and as follows:

- External walls (not masonry veneer): Turn up at least 75 mm on the inside and tack. Project 10 mm beyond the external slab edge or dwarf wall and turn down at 45°.
- Walls of bathrooms, shower rooms and laundries: Turn up at least 150 mm on the wet side and tack to studs.

Installation: Lay in long lengths. Lap full width at angles and intersections and at least 150 mm at joints.

Junctions: Preserve continuity at junctions of damp-proof courses, sarkings and waterproof membranes.

Flashings
Location: Provide flashings to external openings to prevent the entry of moisture. Form trays at the ends of sill flashings.

Masonry veneer construction: Extend flashing across cavities and build into brickwork.

3.4 ROOF AND CEILING FRAMING

Wall plates
Fixing: Fix timber wall plates to masonry, with straps, bolts or both.

Fixing plates
Requirement: Provide timber fixing plates to transfer the design loads where timber joists, rafters or purlins bear on or into steel members, as documented. Bolt to the steel member at maximum 500 mm centres and at a maximum of 100 mm from the end of the fixing plate.

Beam framing
Ridge straps: Butt ends of rafters together at ridge, and strap each pair together with 900 mm long steel strap passing over the ridge, triple nail to each rafter.

Additional support
Requirement: Provide additional frame members at the following locations:

- Hanging light fittings.
- Ceiling fans.
- Access panels.
- Any other hanging services or fixtures and fittings.

Water tank or heater in roof space: Provide a support platform to AS/NZS 3500.4 (2021) clause 5.5.1.

Anti-ponding boards
Standard: To AS 4200.2 (2017).

Trusses
Nailplated prefabricated roof trusses: To AS 4440 (2004).

Support: Support trusses on bottom chord at two points only, unless designed for additional support.

Plumb: The lesser of H/50 or 50 mm, where H is the height of the truss at point where plumb is being measured.

Vertical movement: Provide minimum vertical clearance of 10 mm plus ceiling batten depth over internal non-load bearing walls. Use bracing methods that allow for the design vertical movements.

3.5 ROOF TRIM

Fascia, valley and barge boards
Requirement: Fix fascia, valley gutter boards and barge boards.

3.6 COMPLETION

Protection
Protection from weather: Provide temporary protection for members until permanent covering is in place.

Tightening
Requirement: Retighten bolts, screws and other fixings so that all joints and anchorages are secure at the date of practical completion.

Cleaning
General: On completion of framing remove debris from any gaps between members and make sure void between bottom chord of roof trusses and top of any non-supporting internal wall is clear.

0411B WATERPROOFING - EXTERNAL AND TANKING

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide external waterproofing and tanking systems to substrates, as documented.

Performance

Requirements:

- Graded to falls to dispose of stormwater without ponding above the depth of lapped seams.
- Able to accommodate anticipated building movements.
- Able to accommodate its own shrinkage over the warranty life of the roofing system.
- Able to resist water under hydrostatic pressure.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 STANDARDS

Below ground waterproofing

Membrane design and installation: To BS 8102 (2022).

External waterproofing

Membrane materials: To AS 4654.1 (2012).

Membrane design and installation: To AS 4654.2 (2012).

Stormwater drainage

Standard: To AS/NZS 3500.3 (2021).

Slip resistance

Classification: To AS 4586 (2013).

1.4 INTERPRETATION

Abbreviations

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the following abbreviations apply:

- APP: Atactic polypropylene.
- SBS: Styrene butadiene styrene.

Definitions

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the definitions given in AS 4654.1 (2012) and AS 4654.2 (2012) and the following apply:

- Bitumen: A viscous material from the distillation of crude oil comprising complex hydrocarbons, which is soluble in carbon disulfide, softens when it is heated, is waterproof and has good powers of adhesion. It is produced as a refined by-product of oil.
  - . APP bitumen: Bitumen modified with atactic (meaning non-crystalline or amorphous) polypropylene wax to form a plastomeric sheet. The membrane is reinforced with fibreglass or non-woven polyester (NWP).
  - . SBS bitumen: Bitumen modified with styrene-butadiene-styrene, a thermoplastic rubber that undergoes a phase inversion at elevated temperature and converts to an elastomeric material. The membrane is reinforced with fibreglass or non-woven polyester (NWP).
- Bond breaker: A system preventing a membrane bonding to the substrate, bedding or lining.
- Double detail joint: A joint formed by turning up and bonding the horizontal membrane to a vertical substrate and adding an overflashing of membrane material bonded to the vertical substrate and folded over and bonded to the horizontal membrane. In certain situations the double detail can be achieved by bonding an angle profile of membrane material to the junction prior to laying the membrane.
- Liquid applied: A water-based formulation that cures to form an elastomeric membrane.

- Polyurethane: Water or solvent-based formulations that moisture cure to form an elastic rubber membrane.
- PVC membrane: Flexible plastic sheet membrane (vinyl).
- Slip sheet: A sheet used to isolate the membrane system from the supporting substrate or from the topping or mortar bedding. The most common material is polyethylene.
- Substrate: The surface to which a material or product is applied.
- Waterproofing system: Combinations of membranes, flashings, drainage and accessories that form waterproof barriers and that may be:
  . Loose-laid.
  . Bonded to substrates.

1.5 SUBMISSIONS

Operation and maintenance manuals
Requirement: Submit manual to **COMPLETION**, **Operation and maintenance manuals**.

Records
General: Submit photographic records to EXECUTION, **GENERAL**, **Reporting**.

Flood tests: Submit photographic records to **TESTING**, **Flood tests**.

Subcontractors
General: Submit names and contact details of proposed suppliers and installers as recommended by the manufacturer.

Substrate acceptance: Submit evidence of installer's acceptance of the flooring substrate before starting installation.

Tests
Site tests: Submit test results of the following:
- Substrate moisture content to **TESTING**, **Substrate moisture tests**.
- Flood test, including results of retesting after rectification, to **TESTING**, **Flood tests**.
- Slip resistance of completed installation to **TESTING**, **Slip resistance tests**.

Warranties
Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Error! Reference source not found.**.

1.6 INSPECTION

Notice
Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:
- Substrates prepared and ready for installation of the waterproofing and tanking systems.
- Secondary layers prepared and ready for subsequent layers.
- Membranes after installation and before concealment.
- Underflashings after installation and before installation of overflashings.
- After flood testing, if applicable.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Storage and handling
General: Store and handle to the manufacturer's recommendations and as follows:
- Protect materials from damage.

2.2 MEMBRANES

Membrane system
Requirement: Proprietary membrane system suitable for the intended external waterproofing.

Tanking system
Requirement: Proprietary membrane system suitable for the intended below ground tanking.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

Internal roof outlets
General: Proprietary funnel shaped sump cast into the roof slab, set flush with membrane, with a removable grating and provision for sealing the membrane into the base of the outlet.

Bond breakers
Requirement: Compatible with the extensibility class of the membrane to be used.

Material: Purpose-made bond breaker tapes and closed cell foam backing rods or fillets of sealant.

Flashings
Requirement: Flexible waterproof flashings compatible with the waterproof membrane system.

Liquid membrane reinforcement
Requirement: Flexible fabric compatible with the waterproof membrane system.

Sealants
Requirement: Waterproof, flexible, mould-resistant and compatible with the waterproofing system.

Adhesives
Requirement: Waterproof and compatible with the waterproofing system.

Control joint covers
Corners, crossovers, tees and bends: Factory mitred, welded and provided with 50 mm legs.

End closures: Factory folded and sealed to match joint cover profile.

Fixing hobs: Concrete or timber.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

Reporting
General: Make progressive photographic records of the waterproofing installation. Label photographs with the date, location and weather.

Timing: Record at the following stages:

- After substrate preparation.
- After primer application.
- After membrane installation.
- After protection from traffic provided.

Liquid applied membranes:

- Record wet film thickness once every 10 m^2 and compare to the manufacturer's requirements.
- On completion of every 100 m^2 of each coat, compare the amount of membrane used with the manufacturer's application rate and record the result.

3.2 PREPARATION

Substrates
General: Prepare substrates as follows:

- Clean and remove any deposit or finish that may impair adhesion of membranes.
- Remove excessive projections.
- Fill voids and hollows in concrete substrates with a concrete mix not stronger than the substrate.
- Fill cracks in substrates wider than 1.5 mm with a filler compatible with the membrane system.
- Remove all traces of a concrete curing compound if used.

Concrete substrates: Cure for more than 28 days.

Moisture content
Requirement: Verify that the moisture content of the substrate is compatible with the water vapour transmission rate of the membrane system by testing to **TESTING**, **Substrate moisture tests**.

Falls
Requirement: Verify that falls in substrates are greater than 1:100.

Joints and fillets

Internal corners:

- Liquid applied membranes: Provide 15 x 15 mm 45° fillets.
- Sheet membranes: Provide 40 x 40 mm 45° fillets.

Fillet material: Cement or plastic.

External corners: Round or arris edges.

Control joints: Prepare all substrate joints to suit the membrane system.

Priming

Compatibility: If required, prime the substrates with compatible primers for adhesion of the membrane system.

3.3 INSTALLATION

Ambient conditions

Requirement: Do not install in conditions outside the manufacturer's recommendations.

Protection

Damage: Protect membrane from damage during installation and for the period after installation until the membrane achieves its service characteristics that resist damage.

Drains

General: Prevent moisture from tracking under the membranes at drainage locations.

Drains and cages: Provide removable grates or cages to prevent blockage from debris. If the finished surface is above the level of the membrane, provide a slotted extension piece to bring the grate up to the level of the finished surface.

Overflows: Apply a bond breaker to the perimeter of the overflow outlet at its junction with the surface to which the membrane will be fixed. Turn the membranes into the overflow to prevent moisture from tracking behind the membrane.

Sheet membrane joints

Orientation of laps: Lap sheets on the upslope side of the roof fall over sheets on the downslope side.

End laps generally: Stagger end lap joints.

Bituminous sheet membranes:

- Side laps: ≥ 75 mm.
- End laps: ≥ 150 mm.
- Method: Heat welded.

Synthetic rubber membranes:

- Factory-vulcanized laps: ≥ 40 mm.
- Field side laps: ≥ 50 mm.
- Field end laps: ≥ 100 mm.

PVC membranes:

- Factory-welded laps: ≥ 40 mm.
- Field-welded laps:
  - If used over insulation boards: ≥ 100 mm.
  - Other instances: ≥ 75 mm.

Movement and control joints

General: Install membranes to accommodate control joints in the substructure.

Bond breakers: Size to allow the membrane to accommodate movement.

Joint backing gutter: Fix a formed metal gutter to one side of the soffit directly below the joint and fall to a suitable disposal or drainage point.

Control joint covers: Install after fixing hobs and membranes.

Membrane terminations

Membrane upturns: Provide upturns above the maximum water level expected from the exposure conditions of rainfall intensity and wind, as follows:

- Height: To AS 4654.2 (2012) Table A1.
- Anchoring: Secure sheet membranes along the top edge.
- Edge protection: Protect edges of the membrane.

Waterproofing above vertical upward terminations: Waterproof the structure above the termination to prevent moisture entry behind the membrane using cavity flashings, capping, waterproof membranes or waterproof coatings.

Vertical upward terminations:

- Liquid applied membranes: Terminate under an overflashing, or provide an overflashing of liquid applied membrane.
- Sheet membranes: Terminate under an overflashing, or provide a pressure seal overflashing or an overflashing fixed into a cast-in reglet.

Membrane downturns: Provide downturns for sheet membrane systems as follows:

- Roofs or similar structures: Extend minimum 100 mm from the junction of the structure.
- Balconies with a fully bonded membrane: Terminate at the drip groove.

Vertical downward terminations:

- Liquid applied membranes: Extend membrane to the underside of a horizontal return.
- Sheet membranes: Provide a pressure seal overflashing.

Horizontal terminations: Do not provide. Use vertical terminations.

Membrane penetrations

Vertical penetrations: Provide overflashing fixed to the substrate for vertical penetrations including pipes, ducts and vents.

Horizontal penetrations: Provide SBS bitumen flange to seal the membrane to rigid PVC-U conduits and pipes without burning the PVC-U. Do not use high density polyethylene (HDPE), polypropylene (PP) pipes or flexible PVC conduit.

Membrane at balcony doors and windows

Requirement: Install membrane before fixing door or window frames.

Upturn height above external finished floor level: To AS 4654.2 (2012) Table A1.

Hobless and flush thresholds: Install membrane before fixing door or window frames. Provide a continuous grated drain abutting the external face of the door or window sill.

Membrane around skylights and hatches

Requirement: Install membranes to upstands before the installation of the skylight or hatch.

Upturn height above roof surface: To AS 4654.2 (2012) Table A1.

Membrane at parapets

Requirement: Terminate membrane upturns under parapet flashing or capping with at least 75 mm overlap. Do not top fix parapet cappings. Seal heads of fasteners against capping.

Membrane at gutters

Requirement: Terminate membrane over a corrosion-resistant metal angle fixed to the gutter support substrate with the vertical leg of the angle turned down into the gutter at least 35 mm.

Membrane at post supports

Post supports fixed before membrane:

- Fix post support to substrate with countersunk fasteners and seal the perimeter of the base plate to the substrate.
- Lay out membrane sheets to minimise cuts around the post support vertical member.
- Dress the membrane closely around the post support and seal the edge of the penetration to the vertical member.
- Fix an overflashing so that any joint is staggered as much as possible relative to joints in the base membrane, and overlap at least 150 mm beyond the perimeter of the base plate.

Post supports fixed after membrane:

- Fix post support to substrate with countersunk fasteners over a waterproof resilient gasket cut to match the shape of the base plate, and seal the perimeter of the base plate to the membrane.
- Dress the overflashing closely around the post support and seal the edge of the penetration to the vertical member.
- Fix an overflashing and overlap at least 150 mm beyond the perimeter of the base plate.

Membrane to planter boxes

Membrane: Extend root-resistant membrane at least 100 mm vertically above the soil or fill level and secure.

Drainage: Grade the base of the planter to adequately sized drainage outlets and terminate the membrane in the outlets.

Drainage riser: Install a riser with drainage slots that extend from the membrane level to the top of the drainage cell. Extend the riser above the soil fill level and finish with a screw cap to provide access for drain clearing.

Protection board: Provide protection board to the full extent of the membrane including areas between soil level and the underside of flashings and cappings.

Drainage cell: Provide geo-filter fabric wrapped drainage cell to the base of the planter and turn geo-filter fabric up drainage riser at least 100 mm above drainage slots.

Cappings and flashings: Provide capping to the tops of planter walls to protect the membrane. Extend the capping to overlap the top of the protection board on the inside face of the planter wall. Where planter walls abut other walls, provide a flashing over the top of the membrane.

Membrane to below ground structures

Membrane: Externally apply membrane to all walls and return to horizontal surfaces to prevent water tracking around structure at joints and corners.

Reinforcement: Provide reinforcement to the membrane at junctions, corners and over joints to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Protection board: Provide protection board to the full extent of the membrane.

Drainage cell: Provide geo-filter fabric wrapped drainage cell to vertical surfaces of the structure.

Curing of liquid membrane systems

General: To the manufacturer's recommendations.

Overlaying finishes on membranes

Compatibility: If a membrane is to be overlaid with another system such as tiles, pavers, ballast, insulation or soil, provide an overlaying system that is compatible with and will not cause damage to the membrane.

Bonded or partially bonded membranes: If the topping or bedding mortar is to be bonded to the membrane, provide sufficient control joints in the topping or bedding mortar to reduce the movement over the membrane.

Slip sheet: If the topping or bedding mortar is structurally sufficient to not require bonding to the substrate, lay a double slip sheet over the membrane to separate it from the topping or bedding mortar.

Paint coatings: If maintenance pathways are indicated by a paving paint, use a paving paint that is compatible with the membrane.

3.4 TESTING

Substrate moisture tests

Moisture content of concrete substrate: Test substrate in-slab relative humidity to ASTM F2170 (2019). Perform three tests for the first 100 m^2 of subfloor area and an additional test for each additional 100 m^2.

Moisture content of timber, plywood and particleboard substrate: Test substrate to AS/NZS 2098.1 (2006) for plywood substrates or to AS/NZS 1080.1 (2012) for timber and particleboard substrates.

Flood tests

Requirement: Perform a flood test before the installation of surface finishes.

Moisture content measurement method: To **Substrate moisture tests**.

Set-up:

- Measure the wall/floor junction of adjacent spaces and of the slab soffit below for dryness.
- Record the result for each area.
- Dam the access openings and seal drainage outlets.
- Provide temporary overflows of the same capacity as the outlets.
- Fill space with clean water as follows:
  - . Minimum water level: 25 mm.
  - . Maximum water level: 100 mm.
  - . Minimum dimension below perimeter flashings: 25 mm.
- Test duration: Minimum 24 hours and maximum 72 hours.

Records:

- Make photographic records of the flooded areas and adjacent areas.
- Label photographs with the date and location.

Evaluation:

- Visual test: Drain the water. After 2 hours, visually inspect the wall/floor junction of adjacent spaces and of the slab soffit below for water or moisture.

- Moisture meter test: If there is no visual evidence of water, test the same areas for dryness using a moisture meter, and compare the results to the measurements taken before flooding.

Conformance:

- Evidence of water from the visual test: Failure.
- Test results indicating an increase in moisture after flooding: Failure.
- Failure: If required, remedy defects and retest.

Slip resistance tests

Slip resistance of completed installation: To AS 4663 (2013).

3.5 COMPLETION

Reinstatement

Extent: Repair or replace faulty or damaged work. If the work cannot be repaired satisfactorily, replace the whole area affected.

Operation and maintenance manuals

Requirement: Prepare a manual that includes the manufacturer's maintenance recommendations, including the following:

- Preventative maintenance procedures.
- Instructions and procedures for the repair of the membrane.

0421 ROOFING - COMBINED

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General
Requirement: Provide a roofing system and associated work, as documented.

Performance
Thermal qualities: Provide glazing with U-Value and Solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC), as documented.

Ambient climatic conditions
Design rainfall intensity (mm/h) to AS/NZS 3500.3 (2021): 5% AEP of 144mm/hr

Corrosion resistance
Material: To the manufacturer's recommendations for distance from marine influence.

Distance from marine influence: >100km

Roof access
Requirement: To *0193 Building access safety systems*.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General
Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.
- *0461 Glazing*.

1.3 INTERPRETATION

Abbreviations
General: For the purposes of this worksection, the following abbreviations apply:

- EPS: Expanded polystyrene.
- EPS-FR: Expanded polystyrene with fire retardant.
- MRF: Mineral fibre.
- PF: Phenolic foam.
- PIR: Rigid polyisocyanurate.
- PUR: Rigid polyurethane.
- XPS: Extruded polystyrene.

Definitions
General: For the purposes of this worksection, the definitions given in AS 1562.1 (2018), AS 2049 (2002), AS 2050 (2018) and AS 4597 (1999), and the following apply.

- Roof shake: A non-interlocking product made from split or sawn timber used to form the field of the roof.

1.4 TOLERANCES

Sheet metal roofing
Supporting members: To AS 1562.1 (2018) clause 4.2.3.

Shingles, shakes and slate roofing
Battens: To AS 4597 (1999) clause 3.2.

Tile roofing
Roof tiles: Dimensional tolerance to AS 2049 (2002) clause 5.2.

Battens: To AS 2050 (2018) clause 3.2.

Insulated panel roofing
Requirement: To manufacturer's recommendations.

Structural steelwork for insulated panel roofing system: ±5 mm between bearing planes of adjacent supports.

Supporting members: To AS 1562.1 (2018) clause 4.2.3.

1.5 SUBMISSIONS

Certification

Design of glazed roofing: Submit an engineer's certificate confirming conformance to AS 1288 (2021).

Execution details

Site glazing: If site glazing is intended, submit proposals.

Fire performance

Combustibility: Submit evidence of conformity to PRODUCTS, **FIRE PERFORMANCE**, **Combustibility**.

Fire hazard properties: Submit evidence of conformity to PRODUCTS, **FIRE PERFORMANCE**, **Fire hazard properties**.

Operation and maintenance manuals

Requirement: Submit manual to **COMPLETION**, **Operation and maintenance manuals**.

Products and materials

Safety glazing materials: Submit evidence of conformity to AS 2208 (2023) Appendix A.

Thermal insulation performance: Submit evidence of performance to AS/NZS 4859.1 (2018) and AS/NZS 4859.2 (2018).

Type tests: As appropriate for the project, submit evidence of conformity to the following:

- Metal roofing generally: Roof sheeting and fastenings to AS 1562.1 (2018) clause 5.4 for resistance to concentrated loads and AS 1562.1 (2018) clause 5.5 for resistance to wind pressures.
- Metal roofing in AS/NZS 1170.2 (2021) cyclonic regions. Roof sheeting and fastenings to AS 1562.1 (2018) clause 5.6.
- Plastic sheet roofing: Roofing and fastenings to AS 1562.3 (2006) Section 5 for resistance to wind forces and resistance to impact.
- Shingle, shake and slate roofing: Dynamic weather resistance test to AS 4597 (1999) Appendix C.
- Tile roofing: Dynamic weather resistance test to AS 4046.9 (2002).

Samples

Requirement: Submit samples to PRODUCTS, **GENERAL**, **Samples**.

Subcontractors

Installer experience: Submit evidence of experience with non-ferrous, shingle and shake, slate, insulated panel or glazed roofing installation.

Site glazing: Submit evidence of glazier's acceptance of the supporting structure and framing before starting the installation.

Warranties

Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Warranties**.

1.6 INSPECTION

Notice

Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:

- Roof supports before covering up or concealing.
- Glazing products before they are installed.
- The parts of the roofing, sarking, vapour barrier, insulation and roof plumbing installation before covering up or concealing.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Samples

Requirement: Provide samples of the following, showing the range of variation available:

- Trim and accessories with a colour finish.
- Custom profiled flashings and cappings.
- Sheet metal roofing:
  - . Sheet metal finishes.
  - . Sealants.

  . Pre-weathered finish to sheet metal.
- Shingles and shakes roofing:
  . Sealants.
  . Shingles or shakes.
- Slate roofing:
  . Bedding and pointing mortar.
  . Slate tiles.
- Tile roofing:
  . Bedding and pointing mortar.
  . Tiles.
- Insulated panel roofing:
  . Panel metal finishes.
  . Sealants.
- Glazed roofing:
  . Glazing materials, each at least 200 x 200 mm, showing specified visual properties.
  . Sealants.

Storage and handling

Storage: To the manufacturer's recommendations and as follows:

- Keep clean, dry and unexposed to weather.
- Metal roofing materials: Store away from uncured concrete and masonry, on a level base and not in contact with other materials that cause staining, denting or other surface damage.
- Sheeting: Stack flat and off the ground on at least 3 evenly placed bearers.
- Tile, slate, shingles and shakes roofing: Store clear of the ground, protected from damage.
- Insulated panel roofing materials: Store off the ground, in sealed unopened packaging on a slightly sloped surface to prevent ponding on panel faces.
- Glazed roofing materials: Protect from building materials and loose debris such as wet plaster, mortar, paint and welding splatter.

Handling: Handle metal roofing material as follows:

- Use gloves when handling precoated metal roofing material.
- Use soft soled shoes when fixing or working on roofs.
- Protect edges and surfaces from damage. Do not drag sheets across each other or over other materials.

Handling glazed roofing material: To the manufacturer's recommendations.

Storage area conditions: Allocate a safe and trade free area.

Welded safety mesh

Standard: To AS/NZS 4389 (2015).

2.2 FIRE PERFORMANCE

Combustibility

Insulated panel system and glazed roofing: Tested to AS 1530.1 (1994).

Fire hazard properties

Insulated panels: Group number to AS 5637.1 (2015).

Insulation materials: Conform to the following, tested to AS/NZS 1530.3 (1999).

- Spread-of-Flame Index: ≤ 9.
- Smoke-Developed Index: ≤ 8 if Spread-of-Flame Index > 5.

Plastics glazing: Conform to the following, tested to AS/NZS 1530.3 (1999).

- Spread-of-Flame Index: ≤ 9.
- Smoke-Developed Index: ≤ 8 if Spread-of-Flame Index > 5.

2.3 PROFILED SHEET METAL ROOFING

Standards

Design and materials: To AS 1562.1 (2018).

Fasteners

Requirement: Starter clips, fixing clips and fastenings to the roofing system supplier's recommendations.

Prefinished exposed fasteners: Finish with an oven baked polymer coating to match the roofing material.

Fastenings to timber battens: Fastenings long enough to penetrate the thickness of the batten without piercing the underside.

Profiled fillers

Type: Purpose-made closed cell polyethylene foam profiled to match the roofing profile.

Location: Provide profiled fillers under flashings to the following:

- Ridges.
- Eaves.
- Lapped joints in roof sheeting.

Insulation spacers

Description: Proprietary spacer system to prevent excessive compression of insulation between roof sheeting and framing.

Components

Sealant: 100% neutral cure non-acid based silicone rubber to match roofing.

2.4 ROOF PLUMBING

General

Description: Flashings, cappings, gutters, rainheads, outlets, external downpipes and accessories necessary to complete the roofing system.

Flashing and capping: Notched to match profile of roofing.

Matching fascia/barge capping: If the selected eaves gutter is a proprietary high front pattern forming part of a combined system of gutter, fascia and barge, provide matching proprietary fascias and barge cappings to roof verges and edges.

Standards

Roof drainage: To AS/NZS 3500.3 (2021).

Metal rainwater goods: To AS/NZS 2179.1 (2014).

Flashings and cappings: To AS/NZS 2904 (1995).

2.5 SKYLIGHTS

General

Standard: To AS 4285 (2019).

Description: A proprietary skylight system for installation in roofs pitched less than 15°, including framing, fixing, trim, seals, accessories and flashings.

2.6 ROOF HATCHES

General

Description: A proprietary roof hatch system, including framing, fixing, trim, seals, accessories and flashings.

2.7 ROOF WINDOWS

General

Standard: To AS 4285 (2019).

Description: A proprietary window system designed for non-vertical installation in roofs pitched greater than 15° and less than 90°, consisting of the following:

- Timber frame and sash, shop clear primed or prefinished.
- External anodised aluminium protective profiles.
- Sealed double glazing.
- Horizontally pivoted sash, 180° reversible, on patent friction hinges.
- Opening and locking by patent control bar.
- Ventilation flap.

2.8 ROOF VENTILATORS

General

Description: A proprietary roof ventilator system including framing, fixing, trim, seals, accessories and flashings.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

Preparation

Substrates or framing: Before fixing roofing, check the alignment of substrates or framing and adjust if required.

Flexible underlay: Check that the underlay or insulation is restrained.

Roofing: Make sure the roofing is clean and free of dust and loose particles.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Protection

General: Keep the roofing and rainwater system free of debris and loose material during construction.

Protection: Protect surfaces and finishes, including the retention of protective coatings during installation.

Thermal movement

Requirement: Allow for thermal movement in the roof installation and the structure, including movement in joints and fastenings.

Metal separation

Requirement: Prevent direct contact between incompatible metals, and between green hardwood or chemically treated timber and aluminium or coated steel, by one of the following methods:

- Applying an anti-corrosion, low moisture transmission coating to contact surfaces.
- Inserting a separation layer.

3.3 PROFILED SHEET METAL ROOFING

Installation

Standard: To AS 1562.1 (2018).

Fastener type, size, corrosion resistance class and spacing: To the sheet metal roofing manufacturer's recommendations.

Swarf: Remove swarf and other debris as soon as it is deposited.

Accessories: Provide accessories with the same finish as roofing sheets to complete the roofing installation.

Pan type sheets

Removal: Install sheets so that individual sheets can be removed without damage.

Curved corrugated sheet

General: Form by rolling from material recommended for curving or bullnosing. Minimise crimping or creasing across the face of the sheet. Trim off crimped or creased edges and ends.

Ridges and eaves

Sheet ends: Treat as follows:

- Project sheets 50 mm into gutters.
- Close off ribs at bottom of sheets using mechanical means or with purpose-made fillers or end caps.
- Turn pans of sheets up at tops and down into gutters by mechanical means.
- Provide pre-cut notched eaves flashing and birdproofing if required.
- Close off ridges with purpose-made ridge fillers of closed cell polyethylene foam.

Ridge and barge

Capping: Finish off along ridge and verge lines with purpose-made ridge capping or barge rolls.

Sprung curved ridge

General: Lay the roofing sheets in single lengths from eaves to eaves by naturally curving the sheets over the ridge.

Ridge: Seal side laps at the ridge and extend the sealant to the point where the roof pitch equals the recommended pitch of the roofing profile.

End laps
General: If end laps are unavoidable, and the sheet profile is not suitable for interlocking or contact end laps, construct a stepped type lap.

3.4 ROOF PLUMBING

Jointing sheet metal rainwater goods
Butt joints: Make joints over a backing strip of the same material.

Soldered joints: Do not solder aluminium or aluminium/zinc-coated steel.

Sealing: Seal fasteners and mechanically fastened joints. Fill the holes of blind rivets with silicone sealant.

Flashings
Installation: Flash roof junctions, upstands, abutments and projections through the roof. Preform to required shapes if possible. Notch, scribe, flute or dress down as necessary to follow the profile of adjacent surfaces. Mitre angles and lap joints 150 mm in running lengths. Provide matching expansion joints for every two lengths of flashing, at a maximum of 12 m centres.

Upstands: Flash projections above or through the roof with two part flashings, consisting of a base flashing and a cover flashing, with at least 100 mm vertical overlap. Provide for independent movement between the roof and the projection.

Large penetrations in low pitch roofs: Extend the flashing over the roofing to the ridge to prevent ponding behind the penetrating element.

Wall abutments: If a roof abuts a wall, provide overflashing as follows:

- In masonry walls, planked cladding or concrete: Step in courses to the roof slope. Interleave with damp-proof course, if any.
- Raking in masonry: Build into the full width of the outer leaf. Turn up and across the cavity and fix to or build into the inner leaf at least 75 mm above the roofing line.
- Raking in concrete: Turn 25 mm into joints or grooves, wedge at 200 mm centres with compatible material and point up.

Fixing to pipes: Solder or seal with neutral cure silicone rubber and secure with either of the following:

- Clamping ring.
- Proprietary flexible clamping shoe with attached metal surround flashing.

Gutters
Gutter and sump support: Provide framing and lining to support valley gutters, box gutters and sumps. Line the whole area under the gutters and sumps.

Box gutter: Prefabricate box gutters to the required section and shape as follows:

- Form stop ends, downpipe nozzles, bends and returns.
- Dress downpipe nozzles into outlets.
- Hail guards: Install grating over the whole of the box gutter, over all box gutter sumps and over the edges of roofing sheeting entering box gutters.
- Overflows: Provide overflows to prevent back-flooding. Size to pass 100% of the design rainfall. Discharge overflows in visible locations and so water does not enter the building or cause damage to the building.
- Sumps: Minimum 150 mm deep and the full width of the box gutter.

Valley gutters: Profile to suit the valley boarding. Turn back both edges 180 x 6 mm radius. Nail or screw to the valley boarding at the top end to prevent the gutter creeping downwards.

Gratings: Install removable gratings over rainheads and sumps.

Leaf guard location: All gutter outlets.

External downpipes
General: Prefabricate downpipes to the required section and shape where possible. Connect heads to gutter outlets and, if applicable, connect feet to rainwater drains.

Access cover: Provide a removable watertight access cover at the foot of each downpipe stack.

- Size: Not less than the diameter of the downpipe.

Downpipe support: Provide supports and fixings for downpipes.

3.5 SKYLIGHTS

Installation

Standard: To AS 4285 (2019).

3.6 COMPLETION

Reinstatement

Extent: Repair or replace damage to the roofing and rainwater system. If the work cannot be repaired satisfactorily, replace the whole area affected.

Damage to prepainted finish: Replace panels with scratches in the prepainted finish greater than 2 mm in width visible from the ground.

Fasteners: Make sure weathertight and external panel facings are not distorted.

Cleaning

Roofing and rainwater drainage system: Remove debris, metal swarf, solder, sealants and unused materials.

Exposed metal surfaces: Clean surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform weathering or oxidisation.

Roof plumbing: Clean out spoutings, gutters and rainwater pipes after completion of roof installation.

Glazed roofing: Clean all glazing and framing with soft clean cloths and clean water, finishing with a clean squeegee. Do not use abrasive or alkaline materials.

Protection: After completion, remove protective coatings using methods to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Insulated panels: Clean surfaces to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Spares

Number:

- Tiles: Provide one spare matching tile for every hundred on the roof. Provide spare accessories in the same ratio.
- Slates, shingles or shakes: Provide one spare matching slate, shingle or shake for every hundred on the roof. Provide spare accessories in the same ratio.

Location: Stack spares within the roof space.

Designated locations: On or next to lines of supporting walls.

Operation and maintenance manuals

Requirement: Prepare a manual that includes recommendations from the roofing manufacturer or supplier for the maintenance of the roofing system including frequency of inspection and recommended methods of access, inspection, cleaning, repair and replacement.

Warranties

4 SELECTIONS

4.1 PERFORMANCE

Roofing performance schedule

	A	B	C
Combustibility			
Fire hazard property: Group number			
Fire hazard property: Spread-of-Flame Index			
Fire hazard property: Smoke-Developed Index			
Solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC)			
U-Value ($W/m^2.K$)			
R-Value ($m^2.K/W$)			
Solar absorptance			
Light Reflectance Value (LRV)			

0451B WINDOWS AND GLAZED DOORS

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide windows and glazed doors, as documented.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 STANDARDS

General

Selection and installation: To AS 2047 (2014).

Glazing

Glass type and thickness: To AS 1288 (2021), if no glass type or thickness is nominated.

Materials and installation: To AS 1288 (2021).

Quality requirements for cut-to-size and processed glass: To AS/NZS 4667 (2000).

1.4 SUBMISSIONS

Certification

Windows and glazed doors: Submit evidence of conformity to AS 2047 (2014).

Sealant compatibility: Submit statements from all parties to the installation certifying the compatibility of sealants and glazing systems to all substrates.

Toughened glass: For each batch of glass, submit certification from the manufacturer of heat soaking.

Fire performance

Fire-resistance level: Submit evidence of conformity to PRODUCTS, **FIRE PERFORMANCE**, **Fire-resistance of building elements**.

Operation and maintenance manuals

Requirement: Submit manual to **COMPLETION**, **Operation and maintenance manuals**.

Products and materials

Safety glazing materials: Submit evidence of conformity to AS 2208 (2023) Appendix A.

Type tests: Submit results, as follows:

- Acoustic performance of windows and doors.
- Protection of openable windows.

Samples

Requirement: Submit samples to PRODUCTS, **GENERAL**, **Samples**.

Shop drawings

General: Submit shop drawings, to a scale that best describes the detail, showing the following:

- Full size sections of members.
- Hardware, fittings and accessories including fixing details.
- Junctions and trim to adjoining surfaces.
- Layout (sectional plan and elevation) of the window assembly.
- Methods of assembly.
- Methods of installation, including fixing, caulking and flashing.
- Provision for vertical and horizontal expansion.
- Method of glazing, including the following:
  - Rebate depth.
  - Edge restraint.

. Clearances and tolerances.
. Glazing gaskets and sealant beads.

Subcontractors
General: Submit names and contact details of proposed manufacturers and installers.

Warranties
Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Warranties**.

1.5 INSPECTION

Notice
Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:
- Openings prepared to receive windows.
- Fabricated window assemblies at the factory ready for delivery to the site.
- Fabricated window assemblies delivered to the site, before installation.
- Commencement of window installation.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Samples
Requirement: Provide samples labelled with the series code reference and date of manufacture.

Window and door framing: Provide samples of the following:
- Prefinished production materials showing the limits of the range of variation in the documented colour.
- Joints made by proposed techniques.
- Sections for frames, sashes and slats.

Glazing: Provide samples of glazing materials, each at least 200 x 200 mm, showing the visual properties and range of variation, if any, for each of the following:
- Tinted or coloured glass or plastics glazing.
- Surface modified or surface coated glass.
- Patterned or obscured glass or plastics glazing.
- Wired glass.
- Mirror glass.

Hardware and accessories: Provide samples of the following:
- Window manufacturer’s standard hardware and accessories including locks, latches, handles, catches, sash operators, anchor brackets and attachments, masonry anchors and weatherseals (pile or extruded).
- Generic hardware: Provide samples of generic hardware not documented as proprietary items.

Storage and handling
Storage: Store in a clean, dry area unaffected by weather, to the manufacturer's recommendations. Protect from building materials and loose debris such as wet plaster, mortar, paint and welding splatter.

Handling: Handle frames to the manufacturer's recommendations and as follows:
- Stack upright, off the ground and against a flat, vertical surface.
- Carry in the vertical position with sashes locked.
- Do not rack frames out of square.
- Do not remove any bands and corner bracing until after installation.

Acoustic performance
Windows and doors: Rating to AS/NZS ISO 717.1 (2004), as documented.

Protection of openable windows
Fall prevention: To BCA (2022) D3D29.

Marking
Window assemblies: To AS 2047 (2014) Section 8.

2.2 FIRE PERFORMANCE

Fire-resistance of building elements

Fire-resistance level: Tested to AS 1530.4 (2014).

2.3 FRAMES

Aluminium frames

Standard: To AS 2047 (2014) clause 3.1.

Construction: Assembled from aluminium sections, including accessories such as pile strips, fixing ties or brackets and cavity flashings, with provision for fixing documented hardware and seals.

Subsill: If the frame includes a subsill, provide a self-draining section.

Steel frames

Standard: To AS 2047 (2014) clause 3.4.

Construction: Continuously welded from metallic-coated steel sheet sections, including accessories such as buffers, fixing ties or brackets, and cavity flashing. Provision for fixing documented hardware, seals and electronic security assemblies, and prefinished with a protective coating.

Metallic coating class to AS 1397 (2021) interior: ZF100.

Finish: Grind the welds smooth, cold galvanize the welded joints and shop prime.

Timber frames

Standard: To AS 2047 (2014) clause 3.2.

Hardwood: To AS 2796.1 (1999):

- Grade: Select.

Softwood: To AS 4785.1 (2002):

- Grade: Select.

Construction: Assembled from timber sections, with provision for fixing documented hardware including rebates for seals, if documented.

PVC-U frames

Standard: To AS 2047 (2014) clause 3.3.

2.4 GLAZING

Performance

Glass: Free from defects that detract from appearance or interfere with performance under normal conditions of use.

Plastics glazing: Free from surface abrasions and warranted by the manufacturer for 10 years against yellowing or other colour change, loss of strength and impact resistance, and general deterioration.

Heat soaking

Requirement: Heat soak glass to AS 1288 (2021) clause 3.8.

Standard: To EN 14179-1 (2016).

Marking: To EN 14179-1 (2016) or certified by the manufacturer to AS 1288 (2021) clause 3.8.2.

Safety glazing materials

Standard: To AS 2208 (2023).

Type: Grade A to AS 1288 (2021).

Certification: Required.

- Certification provider: An organisation accredited by the Joint Accreditation System of Australia and New Zealand (JASANZ).

Marking: To AS 2208 (2023) clause 1.6.

Heat-strengthened glass

Requirement: Heat-strengthened annealed glass that requires extra strength and thermal resistance.

Standard: To ASTM C1048 (2018).

Insulating glass units (IGUs)

Requirement: Provide insulating glass units, as documented.

Manufacture, testing and installation: To AS 4666 (2012).

2.5 GLAZING MATERIALS

General

Requirement: Putty, glazing compounds, sealants, gaskets, glazing tapes, spacing strips, spacing tapes, spacers, setting blocks and compression wedges appropriate for the conditions of application and required performance.

Jointing materials

Requirement: Jointing and pointing materials that are compatible with each other and the contact surfaces, and non-staining to finished surfaces to manufacturer's recommendations. Do not provide bituminous materials on absorbent surfaces.

Elastomeric sealants

Sealing compounds (polyurethane, polysulfide, acrylic): To ASTM C920 (2018) or ISO 11600 (2002).

Sealing compounds (silicone): To ASTM C920 (2018) or ISO 11600 (2002).

Sealing compounds (butyl): To ASTM C1311 (2022).

Primer

Compatibility: Apply the manufacturer's recommended primer to the surfaces in contact with sealant materials.

Control joints

Depth of elastomeric sealant: One half the joint width or 6 mm, whichever is the greater.

Foamed materials (in compressible fillers and backing rods): Closed cell or impregnated types that do not absorb water.

Bond breaking: Provide backing rods, and other back-up materials for sealants, that do not adhere to the sealant.

2.6 SCREENS

General

Requirement: Provide screens, as documented.

Fixed screens

General: Fixed screens fitted to the window frames with a clipping device that allows for removal for cleaning.

Hinged screens

General: Screens hinged at the top to give access to opening sash.

Retractable screens

General: Proprietary retractable screens, comprising aluminium frames and fibreglass mesh, fitted between the guide channels incorporated in the frames, and a retraction system including tension spring, bearings, positive self-locking device and elastomeric sealing strip at sill.

Sliding screens

General: Screens that are part of the window frame, with matching aluminium head guide, sill runner, and frame stile sections.

Hardware: Nylon slide runners and finger pull handle. Provide pile strip closers against sash if necessary to close gaps.

Aluminium framed screens

General: Aluminium extruded or folded box frame sections with mesh fixing channel, mitred, staked and screwed at corners. If necessary to adapt to window opening gear, provide an extended frame section.

Mesh: Bead the mesh into the frame channel with a continuous resilient gasket, so that the mesh is taut and free of distortion.

2.7 SECURITY WINDOW GRILLES

General

Requirement: Proprietary metal security grilles, or operable screen and frames, fixed to the building structure with tamper resistant fastenings.

Standard: To AS 5039.1 (2023).

2.8 ALUMINIUM FRAME FINISHES

Powder coatings

Anodised

Standard: To AS 1231 (2000).

Thickness:

- Internal: 15 µm.
- External: 20 µm.

2.9 OTHER MATERIAL FRAME FINISHES

Finish
Standard: To AS 2047 (2014) clause 3.4.1.4.

2.10 ANCILLARY COMPONENTS AND FITTINGS

Trim
General: Provide trim, shadow angles and architraves, as documented.

Extruded gaskets and seals
General: Provide seals, as documented.

Materials: Non-cellular (solid) elastomeric seals as follows:

- Rubber products: Neoprene, ethylene propylene diene monomer (EPDM) or silicone rubber.
- Flexible polyvinyl chloride (PVC): E type compounds, colourfastness grade B.

Flashings
General: Corrosion-resistant, compatible with the other materials in the installation, and coated with a non-staining compound if necessary.

Standard: To AS/NZS 2904 (1995).

Nylon brush seals
General: Dense nylon bristles locked into holding strips and fixed in a groove in the edge of the door or in purpose-made anodised aluminium holders fixed to the door or frame to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Pile weatherstrips
General: Provide weatherstrips, as documented.

Standard: To AAMA 701/702 (2023).

Material: Pile and backing or equivalent polypropylene, low friction silicone treated, ultraviolet stabilised, fixed to the frame to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Finned type: A pile weatherseal with a central polypropylene fin bonded into the centre of the backing rod and raised above the pile level.

Weather bars
General: Provide corrosion-resistant weather bars or threshold plates for hinged external doors, located under the centres of closed doors or to manufacturer’s recommendations.

2.11 HARDWARE

Hardware documented generically
General: Provide hardware of sufficient strength and quality to perform its function, appropriate to the intended conditions of use, compatible with associated hardware, and fabricated with fixed parts firmly joined.

Window locks and latches
Standard: To AS 4145.2 (2008).

Window catches: Provide 2 catches per sash to manually latched awning or hopper sashes over 1000 mm wide.

Sash balances
Requirement: Match the spring strength of the balances to the sash weight they support.

Sash operators
Requirement: Provide sash operators, as documented.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 GLAZING PROCESSING

General
Processing: Perform required processes on glazing, including cutting, obscuring, silvering and bending. Form necessary holes, including for fixings, equipment, access openings and speaking holes. Process exposed glass edges to a finish not inferior to ground arrised.

3.2 INSTALLATION

General

Requirement: Install windows and glazed doors as follows:

- Plumb, level, straight and true within building tolerances.
- Fixed or anchored to the building structure in conformance with the wind action loading requirements.
- Isolated from any building loads, including loads caused by structural deflection or shortening.
- Allow for thermal movement.

Glazing

Requirement: Install the glass as follows:

- Permanently fix in place each piece of glass to withstand the normal loadings and ambient conditions at its location without distortion or damage to glazing materials.
- No transfer of building movements to the glazing.
- Watertight and airtight for external glazing.

Temporary marking: Use a method that does not damage the glazing. Remove marking only after certification and acceptance of the installation.

Toughened glass: Do not cut, drill, edgework or permanently mark after toughening. Use installation methods that prevent the glass making direct contact with metals or other non-resilient materials.

Frameless installations: Join the vertical edges of adjacent glass panels with silicone jointing compound.

Heat-absorbing glass: In locations exposed to direct sunlight, provide wheel cut edges free from damage or blemishes, with minimum feather.

Preglazing

Window assemblies and glazed doors: Supply inclusive of glazing, shop preglazed.

Site glazing

External timber framed glazing: Glaze with putty.

Weatherproofing

Flashing and weatherings: Install flashings, weather bars, threshold plates, drips, storm moulds, joint sealant and pointing to prevent water penetrating the building between the window frame and the building structure under the prevailing service conditions, including normal structural movement of the building.

Fixing

Packing: Pack behind fixing points with durable full width packing.

Fasteners: Conceal fasteners.

Fasteners and fastener spacing: Conform to the recommendations of the manufacturer.

Prepared masonry openings: If fixing of timber windows to prepared anchorages needs fastening from the frame face, sink the fastener heads below the surface and fill the depression flush with a material compatible with the surface finish.

Joints

General: Make accurately fitted tight joints so that fasteners or fixing devices such as pins, screws, adhesives and pressure indentations are not visible on exposed surfaces.

Sealants:

- If priming is recommended, prime surfaces in contact with jointing materials.
- If frames are powder coated, apply a neutral cure sealant.

Operation

General: Make sure moving parts operate freely and smoothly, without binding or sticking, at correct tensions or operating forces and are lubricated.

Protection

Removal: Remove temporary protection measures from the following:

- Contact mating surfaces before joining up.
- Exposed surfaces before completion of the works.

Seals

General: Provide the fixings, rebates, grooves, and clearances required for installation and operation of the seals. Allow seals unwound from coils to settle before use. Install proprietary seals to manufacturer’s recommendations and adjust correctly.

Trim
General: Provide mouldings, architraves, reveal linings, and other internal trim using materials and finishes matching the window frames. Install to make neat and clean junctions between frames and the adjoining building surfaces.

3.3 SECURITY WINDOW GRILLES

General
Installation: To AS 5040 (2003).

3.4 HARDWARE

Fasteners
Materials: Use materials compatible with the item being fixed and of sufficient strength, size and quality to perform their function.

- Concealed fasteners: Provide a corrosion-resistant finish.
- Exposed fasteners: Match exposed fasteners to the material being fixed.

Support: Provide appropriate back support (for example lock stiles, blocking, wall noggings and backing plates) for hardware fasteners.

- Hollow metal sections: Provide backing plates drilled and tapped for screw fixing, or provide rivet nuts with machine thread screws. Do not use self-tapping screws or pop rivets.

Proprietary window systems
Requirement: Provide the standard hardware and internal fixing points for personnel safety harness attachment, if required by and conforming to the governing regulations.

Operation
General: Make sure working parts are accurately fitted to smooth close bearings, without binding or sticking, free from rattle or excessive play, lubricated if appropriate.

Opening force performance: To the NCC cited AS 1428.1 (2009).

Supply
Delivery: Deliver window hardware items, ready for installation, in individual complete sets for each window set, as follows:

- Clearly labelled with the intended location.
- In a separate dust and moisture proof package.
- Including the necessary templates, fixings and fixing instructions.

3.5 COMPLETION

Hardware
Adjustment: Leave the hardware with working parts in working order, and clean, undamaged, properly adjusted, and lubricated if appropriate.

Repair of finish
Polyester or fluoropolymer coatings: Contact supplier for approval to apply touch up products, otherwise replace damaged material.

Cleaning
Method: Clean with soft clean cloths and clean water, finishing with a clean squeegee. Do not use abrasive, acidic or alkaline materials.

Extent: All frames and glass surfaces internally and externally.

Operation and maintenance manuals
Requirement: Prepare a manual that includes the following:

- Window and glazed door manufacturer’s published recommendations for operation, care and maintenance.
- Hardware manufacturer’s published recommendations for use, care and maintenance.

Warranties

0453B DOORS AND ACCESS PANELS

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide doors, frames, doorsets, security screen doors, smoke doorsets and fire-resisting doorsets, as documented.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.
- *0185 Timber products, finishes and treatment*.
- *0455 Door hardware*.

1.3 STANDARDS

General

Timber and composite doors: To AS 2688 (2017).

1.4 INTERPRETATION

Definitions

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the definitions given in AS 2688 (2017) and the following apply:

- Fire-resisting doorset: A doorset that retains its integrity, provides insulation and limits, if required, the transmittance of radiation in a fire.
- Smoke doorset: A doorset that restricts the passage of smoke.

1.5 SUBMISSIONS

Products and materials

Type tests: Submit results, as follows:

- Fire-resisting and smoke doorsets.
- Acoustic performance of doorsets.

Warranties

Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Error! Reference source not found.**.

1.6 INSPECTION

Notice

Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:

- Door frames in place before building in to masonry.
- Door frames installed before fixing trim.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FRAMES

Aluminium frames

Construction: Assembled from aluminium sections, including accessories such as buffers, pile strips, strike plates, fixing ties or brackets and cavity flashings, with provision for fixing documented hardware and seals.

Threshold: If the frame includes a threshold member, provide a self-draining section with slip-resistant surface.

Steel frames

Construction: Continuously welded from metallic-coated steel sheet sections, including accessories such as buffers, strike plates, spreaders, mortar guards, switch boxes, fixing ties or brackets, and cavity flashing with provision for fixing documented hardware, seals and electronic security assemblies, and prefinished with a protective coating.

Base metal thickness (minimum):

- General: 1.1 mm.
- Fire-resisting doorsets: 1.5 mm.
- Security doorsets: 1.6 mm.

Metallic-coating class to AS 1397 (2021) interior: ZF100.

Metallic-coating class to AS 1397 (2021) exterior: [complete/delete]

Finish: Grind the welds smooth, cold galvanize the welded joints and shop prime.

Hardware and accessories: Provide 4 mm backplates and lugs for fixing hardware including hinges and closers. Screw fix the hinges into tapped holes in the backplates.

Timber frames

Hardwood: To AS 2796.1 (1999):

- Grade: Select.

Softwood: To AS 4785.1 (2002):

- Grade: Select.

Joints:

- Morticed head and through tenons.
- Trenched head:
  - Bare faced tenons on jambs.
  - Full let-in jambs.

Construction: Assembled from timber sections, with provision for fixing documented hardware including rebates for door seals, where documented.

2.2 DOORS

General

Doors: Proprietary products manufactured for interior or exterior applications and for the finish required.

Materials

Standards: Conform to the following:

- Decorative laminated sheets: To AS/NZS 2924.1 (2024).
- Wet process fibreboard (including hardboard): To AS/NZS 1859.4 (2018).
- Dry process fibreboard (including medium density fibreboard): To AS/NZS 1859.2 (2017).
- Particleboard: To AS 1859.1 (2017).
- Plywood and blockboard for interior use: To AS/NZS 2270 (2006).
- Plywood and blockboard for exterior use: To AS/NZS 2271 (2004).
- Seasoned cypress pine: To AS 1810 (1995).
- Timber – hardwood: To AS 2796.1 (1999).
- Timber – softwood: To AS 4785.1 (2002).

Identification

Panel doors: Provide panels branded under the authority of a recognised certification scheme to *0185 Timber products, finishes and treatment*, as applicable to the product. Locate the brand on faces or edges that will be concealed in the works.

Joinery doors

General: Provide joinery doors, as documented.

Flush panel doors

General: Provide flush panel doors of balanced construction, as documented.

Medium density fibreboard doors: Single thickness of moisture resistant general purpose medium density fibreboard with the same surface finish to both sides, for internal use.

Construction

General: To AS 2688 (2017).

Adhesives:

- Internal: To AS/NZS 2270 (2006).
- External: To AS/NZS 2271 (2004).

Door thickness:

- General: 35 mm.
- External doors and doors over 900 mm wide: 40 mm.

Cut-outs: If openings are required in flush panel doors (e.g. for louvres or glazing), do not make cut-outs closer than the width of the stiles at the edges of the doors.

Edge strips: Minimum thickness 10 mm. Increase overall thickness to greater than 15 mm to accommodate the full depth of the rebate in rebated doors. Apply to the external edges of door after the facings are bonded to the door framing/core and finish flush with outside surface of the facings.

Louvre grilles: Construct by inserting the louvre blades into a louvre frame, and fix the frame into the door.

Double doors

Square edged doors: Bevel as necessary to prevent binding between the leaves.

Rebated meeting stiles: If not double acting doors, provide rebated meeting stiles or fix equivalent metal T stop to one leaf where documented. Form rebates to suit standard rebated hardware.

2.3 DOORSETS

Marking and labelling

Fire-resisting doorsets: To AS 1905.1 (2015) Section 6.

Doors and doorsets: To AS 2688 (2017) clause 2.5.

Acoustic performance

Doorsets: Rating to AS/NZS ISO 717.1 (2004), as documented.

Automatic door assemblies

Standard: To AS 5007 (2007).

Control systems: To *0455 Door hardware*.

Cavity sliding doors

General: Proprietary product comprising steel and timber frame construction with rigid steel top, base and rear supporting members and incorporating the overhead door track, ball race type wheel carriages, guides, stops, split jamb linings and removable pelmet.

Duct access panels

General: Proprietary products comprising metal-faced doors side-hung to steel door frames, including hardware and accessories such as hinges and lock and installation lugs.

Fire-resisting doorsets

Standard: To AS 1905.1 (2015) and BCA (2022) Spec 12.

Floor access panels

Frame: Weld from 50 x 50 x 6 mm angle, with two 40 mm cogged fixing lugs each side and shop prime.

Covers: 6.5 mm checker floorplate, on 40 x 40 x 6 mm angle welded frame with 32 x 6 mm diagonal stiffening flats. Cut, radius and grind off 100 x 25 mm lifting slots in each end of covers.

Security screen doorsets

Standard: To AS 5039.1 (2023).

Smoke doorsets

Construction: Solid core doors not less than 35 mm thick.

Standard: To AS 6905 (2007) and BCA (2022) Spec 12. Tested to AS 1530.7 (2007).

2.4 ANCILLARY MATERIALS

Trim

General: Provide trim, shadow gaps and architraves, as documented.

Door seals

Acoustic applications: Tested to AS 1191 (2002) or EN ISO 10140-2 (2021) and rated to AS/NZS ISO 717.1 (2004).

Weather and energy saving seals: To AS 4420.1 (2016) Sections 5 and 6, and AS 2047 (2014).

Extruded gaskets and seals

General: Provide seals, as documented.

Materials: Non-cellular (solid) elastomeric seals as follows:

- Rubber products: Neoprene, ethylene propylene diene monomer (EPDM) or silicone rubber.
- Flexible polyvinyl chloride (PVC): E type compounds, colourfastness grade B.

Flashings
General: Corrosion-resistant, compatible with the other materials in the installation, and coated with a non-staining compound where necessary.

Standard: To AS/NZS 2904 (1995).

Jointing materials
General: Compatible with each other and with the contact surfaces and non-staining to finished surfaces. Do not provide bituminous materials on absorbent surfaces.

Nylon brush seals
General: Dense nylon bristles locked into holding strips and fixed in a groove in the edge of the door or in purpose-made anodised aluminium holders fixed to the door or frame to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Pile weatherstrips
General: Polypropylene or equivalent pile and backing, low friction silicone treated, ultraviolet stabilised, fixed to the door or frame to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Standard: To AAMA 701/702 (2023).

Weather bars
General: Provide corrosion-resistant weather bars or threshold plates under hinged external doors, located under the centres of closed doors or to manufacturer’s recommendations.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 FRAMES

General
Frames: Install the frames as follows:

- Plumb, level, straight and true.
- Fixed or anchored to the building structure.
- Isolated from any building loads, including loads caused by structural deflection or shortening.

Frame fixing
Brackets: Metallic-coated steel:

- Width: Minimum 25 mm.
- Thickness: Minimum 1.5 mm.

Depth of fixing for building into masonry:

- Brackets: Minimum 200 mm.
- Expansion anchors: Minimum 50 mm.
- Plugs: Minimum 50 mm.
- Rods: Minimum 60 mm.

Jamb fixing centres: Maximum 600 mm.

Joints
General: Make accurately fitted joints where fasteners, pins, screws, adhesives and pressure indentations are not visible on exposed surfaces.

Aluminium frames
Building into masonry: Screw galvanized steel brackets twice to jambs and build in.

Fixing to masonry openings: Use proprietary expansion anchors and screw twice through jambs at each fixing.

Fixing to stud frame openings: Screw once to studs at each fixing.

Steel frames
Building into masonry: Attach galvanized steel rods to jambs, build in and grout up.

Fixing to masonry openings: Build in hairpin anchors and install locking bars, or use proprietary expansion anchors and screw twice through jambs at each fixing.

Fixing to stud frame openings: Attach galvanized steel brackets to jambs and screw twice to studs at each fixing.

Timber frames
Building into masonry: Screw galvanized steel brackets twice to jambs and build in.

Fixing to masonry openings: Use proprietary expansion anchors and screw twice through jambs at each fixing.

Fixing to stud frame openings: Back screw twice to jambs at each fixing.

Fixing to thresholds: Dowel external door frames to thresholds other than timber with 10 mm diameter brass dowels, 100 mm long.

Heads of fasteners: Conceal if possible, otherwise sink the head below the surface and fill the depression flush with a material compatible with the surface finish.

Finishing

Trim: Provide mouldings, architraves, reveal linings, and other internal trim using materials and finishes matching the door frames to make neat and clean junctions between the frame and the adjoining building surfaces.

Seals

General: Provide the fixings, rebates, grooves, and clearances required for installation and operation of the seals. Allow seals unwound from coils to settle before use. Install proprietary seals to manufacturer's recommendations and adjust correctly.

Weatherproofing

Flashings and weatherings: Install flashings, weather bars, threshold plates, drips, storm moulds, caulking and pointing to prevent water from penetrating the building between the door frame and the building structure under the prevailing service conditions, including normal structural movement of the building.

3.2 DOORS

Priming

General: Prime timber door leaves on top and bottom edges before installation.

Tolerances

Installation: To AS 2688 (2017) Section 7.

3.3 DOORSETS

General

Installation: To AS 2688 (2017) Section 7.

Security screen doorsets

Standard: To AS 5040 (2003).

3.4 COMPLETION

Operation

General: Make sure moving parts operate freely and smoothly, without binding or sticking, at correct tensions or operating forces and that they are lubricated where appropriate.

Opening force performance: To the NCC cited AS 1428.1 (2009).

Protection

Temporary coating: On or before the date for practical completion, or before joining up to other surfaces, remove all traces of temporary coatings used as a means of protection.

Warranties

0455 DOOR HARDWARE

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide door hardware, as documented.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 INTERPRETATION

Abbreviations

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the abbreviations given in AS 4145.1 (2008) Appendix D apply.

Definitions

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the general definitions given in AS 4145.1 (2008) Section 2 and Appendix E apply.

1.4 SUBMISSIONS

Execution details

Door-by-door schedule: Submit a door-by-door hardware schedule.

- Information sources: This worksection and the contract drawings.

Re-use of recovered hardware: Submit a proposal describing the standard of cleaning, repair and testing of recovered items and the location where each is to be re-used.

Key control system:

- New works: Submit details of the proprietary key control security system proposed by the lock manufacturer for locks required to accept a group key (master, grandmaster).
- Alterations and additions: Submit details to extend the existing key control security system for locks required to accept a group key.

Operation and maintenance manuals

Requirement: Submit manual to **COMPLETION**, **Operation and maintenance manuals**.

Records

Door hardware schedule: Submit an amended schedule, prepared by the door hardware supplier, showing changes to the contract door hardware schedule resulting from the following:

- Approval of a hardware sample.
- Acceptance of an equivalent to a specified proprietary item.
- A contract variation to a door hardware requirement.

Key coding system: Submit the lock manufacturer's record of the key coding system showing each lock type, number and type of key supplied, key number for re-ordering, and name of supplier.

Samples

Requirement: Submit samples to PRODUCTS, **GENERAL**, **Samples**.

Subcontractors

Automatic door operators: Submit names and contact details of proposed manufacturer and installer.

Pressure floor mat: Submit names and contact details of proposed manufacturer and installer.

Warranties

Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Error! Reference source not found.**.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Samples

Generic items: Provide samples of hardware items offered as meeting the description of items not specified as proprietary items.

Reconditioned items: Provide samples of hardware items offered as meeting the standard of cleaning, repair and testing of recovered items.

Supply

Delivery: Deliver door hardware items, ready for installation, in individual complete sets for each door, as follows:

- Clearly labelled to show the intended location.
- In a separate dust and moisture proof package.
- Including the necessary templates, accessories fixings and fixing instructions.

Hardware specified generically: Hardware of the required strength and quality to perform its function, appropriate to the intended conditions of use, suitable for use with associated hardware, and fabricated with fixed parts firmly joined.

Storage and handling

General: Store and handle to protect materials from damage, to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Replacement items

Door hardware: Replacement items to match existing, or as documented.

Hinges: If required, upgrade hinges to conform to **Hinges for timber doors table** and **Hinges for aluminium doors table**.

2.2 LOCKS AND LATCHES

Standard

General: To AS 4145.2 (2008).

Padlocks

Standard: To AS 4145.4 (2002).

Lock and latch classification

Rating systems: To AS 4145.1 (2008) Section 3.

Performance requirements: To AS 4145.2 (2008) Section 3.

2.3 HINGES

Butt hinge materials

Doors fitted with closers: Provide low friction ball bearing hinges.

Fire-resisting doors: To AS 1905.1 (2015).

Power transfer hinges: Do not load and install with other compatible hinges.

Lift-off doors: If toilet cubicles require lift-off doors, provide lift-off hinges and allow for door panel with sufficient clearance at the head to allow door removal.

Timber solid core doors

Number of hinges: Determine the number of hinges required based on the nominated door leaf size and weight only. For other door leaf sizes or for doors with applied finishes, use the weight of the door to determine the number of hinges required. For a door leaf over 80 kg, use pivot hinges.

Size of hinges: Determine the size of the hinge based on the door leaf thickness:

- 35 to 43 mm thick door: 100 x 75 mm butt hinges with a minimum thickness of 2.5 mm.
- 44 to 55 mm thick door: 100 x 100 mm butt hinges with a minimum thickness of 2.5 mm.
- > 55 mm thick door: To the door by door hardware schedule.

Hinge pin: Supply fixed pins to hinges of doors opening out or designated as a security doors. For all other doors, provide loose pins.

Wide throw: If necessary, provide wide throw hinges to achieve the required door swings in the presence of obstacles such as nibs, deep reveals and architraves.

Hinges for timber doors table

Nominal door leaf size (L x W x T) (mm)	Door leaf weight (kg)	Number of hinges

Nominal door leaf size (L x W x T) (mm)	Door leaf weight (kg)	Number of hinges
2040 x 400 x 35	≤ 19	2
2040 x 600 x 35	≤ 29	2
2040 x 720 x 35	≤ 35	3
2040 x 820 x 35	≤ 39	3
2040 x 920 x 35	≤ 44	3
2040 x 1020 x 35	≤ 49	4
2040 x 720 x 40	≤ 37	3
2040 x 820 x 40	≤ 42	3
2040 x 920 x 40	≤ 48	3
2040 x 1020 x 40	≤ 52	4
2040 x 720 x 50	≤ 45	3
2040 x 820 x 50	≤ 50	3
2040 x 920 x 50	≤ 57	3
2040 x 1020 x 50	≤ 68	4
2400 x 720 x 40	≤ 50	4
2400 x 820 x 40	≤ 52	4
2400 x 920 x 40	≤ 55	4
2400 x 1020 x 40	≤ 60	4
2400 x 1220 x 50	≤ 72	5
2040 x 920 x 70	≤ 88	Pivot hinges

Aluminium doors

Application: Aluminium hinges for aluminium doors, or for doors of other materials in aluminium frames of a weight of 40 kg or less.

Hinges for aluminium doors table

Nominal hinge size (L x W x T) (mm)	Door leaf weight (kg)	Knuckles (minimum)	Screws/hinge leaf (minimum)
100 x 70 x 3	≤ 30	3	3
100 x 80 x 3.5	≤ 50	5	4
130 x 50 x 3.4	≤ 75	Interfold	3
Length (L) is the dimension along the knuckles, not including hinge tips, if any, and width (W) is the dimension across both hinge leaves when opened flat.			

2.4 SLIDING DOOR HARDWARE

General

Requirement: Provide sliding door tracks and guides, as documented.

2.5 ANCILLARIES

Bolts

General: Barrel bolts, flush bolts and tower bolts with keepers, including lock plates, staples, ferrules or floor sockets.

Door seals

Acoustic applications: Tested to AS 1191 (2002) or EN ISO 10140-2 (2021) and rated to AS/NZS ISO 717.1 (2004).

Weather and energy saving seals: To AS 4420.1 (2016) Sections 5 and 6, and AS 2047 (2014).

Extruded gaskets and seals

General: Provide seals, as documented.

Materials: Non-cellular (solid) elastomeric seals as follows:

- Rubber products: Neoprene, ethylene propylene diene monomer (EPDM) or silicone rubber.

- Flexible polyvinyl chloride (PVC): E type compounds, colourfastness grade B.

Mortar guards
General: For steel door frame installations, provide mortar guards designed to allow the full extension of the lock tongue or similar devices and the correct operation of the locking mechanism.

Nylon brush seals
General: Dense nylon bristles locked into holding strips and fixed in a groove in the edge of the door or in purpose-made anodised aluminium holders fixed to the door or frame to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Pile weatherstrips
General: Polypropylene or equivalent pile and backing, low friction silicone treated, ultraviolet stabilised, fixed to the door or frame to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Standard: To AAMA 701/702 (2023).

Rebated doors
General: For mortice locks or latches to rebated doors, provide purpose-made rebated pattern items.

Strike plates
General: Use strike plates supplied with the locks or latches. Do not provide universal strike plates.

Weather bars
General: Provide corrosion-resistant weather bars or threshold plates under hinged external doors, located under the centres of closed doors or to manufacturer’s recommendations.

2.6 DOOR CONTROLLERS

Standard
General: To AS 4145.5 (2011).

Performance
Requirement: Door controllers, pivots, floor or overhead door closers, and automatic door operators, suitable for the door type, size, weight, sliding action and swings required and the operating conditions, including wind and air conditioning pressure.

Automatic door operators
General: Complete automatic door operators for opening and closing doors, including door hanging (hinges, pivots or sliding gear) and electrical connection to distribution board.

Installation: Provide necessary recesses and core-holes, grout in components if required, and repair any damage. Provide cover plates for access to units in door heads, frames or transoms.

Automatic adjustable function: If the door opening angle or width is manually set below the maximum possible, under conditions of continuous traffic the doors must automatically creep to full opening, returning to reduced opening on the next cycle.

Radio remote door controllers: Provide a device, comprising a radio receiver and separate transmitter, for activating a motorised door operator so as to open and close the door by remote radio signal.

Key switch: If there is no separate access to the enclosure, provide a key switch mounted externally for opening and closing the door from outside the enclosure without the transmitter. Provide two keys.

Light: Provide an internal light that turns on for not less than 2 minutes before switching off automatically.

Receiver: House within a wall unit incorporating a push-button switch permanently illuminated. Mount within the enclosure and connect to power.

Transmitter: Portable battery-powered unit sending a coded signal effective up to not less than 12 m from the receiver.

Pressure floor mats: Automatic door activating system consisting of a mat that, when deflected by foot pressure, operates a switch that activates the door or doors.

Closers
Hinged and pivot doors:

- Fire-resisting doors: Closers tested and certified for use as components of fire-resisting door assemblies:
  . Standard: To AS 1905.1 (2015).

2.7 ELECTRONIC CONTROL DEVICES

General
Requirement: Electric strikes, electric locks, drop bolts and/or similar devices to suit door construction and hardware.

Electromagnetic hold-open devices: To AS 1905.1 (2015) and AS 1670.1 (2018).

Glass doors: Tumbler, drop bolts or magnetic holders.

Double leaf doors (solid frame): Electric strike or lock on the inactive leaf, connected to the door frame by concealed flexible wiring.

Activation

Activation device: Keypads, card readers or other activation devices located next to entry points.

External: Weatherproof (IP56) hoods or housings for external units.

Mounting height: 900 to 1100 mm from floor level and not less than 500 mm from internal corners.

2.8 PANIC EXIT DEVICES

General

Standard: To EN 1125 (2008).

Requirements:

- Field sizable.
- Keyed dogging.

2.9 KEYING

Keying requirements

Standard: To AS 4145.1 (2008) for keying security.

Requirement: Provide door hardware and keys, as documented.

Temporary construction keys and cylinders

Requirement: Provide one of the following:

- Loan cylinder: Install for construction locks and replace at practical completion.
- Construction keyed master key cylinder: Keep up-to-date records of keys issued including recipient's name, company and contact details, date issued and date returned.

Delivery of keys

Great grandmaster, grandmaster and master keys: Arrange for delivery direct to the principal.

Locks keyed to differ and locks keyed alike: Check the quantity against key records, and deliver keys to the contract administrator at practical completion.

Group keying

Keying system: As documented.

Existing system extension: Obtain the details of existing group or master key systems of the system to be extended.

Future extensions: Provide master and grandmaster group keying systems capable of accommodating future extensions.

Proprietary keying control security system: Provide for cylinder or pin-tumbler locks that accept a group key (e.g. master key, maison key).

Stamping: Stamp keys and lock cylinders to show the key codes and/or door number as scheduled.

Identification

Labelling: Supply each key with a purpose-made plastic or stamped metal label legibly marked to identify the key, attached to the key by a metal ring.

Key material

Lever locks: Malleable cast iron or mild steel.

Pin tumbler locks: Nickel alloy, not brass.

Number of keys table

Key code	Key type	Minimum number of keys
GGMK	Great grandmaster keys	2
GMK	Grandmaster keys	2
MK	Master keys	2 per code group
KD	Locks keyed to differ	2 per lock
KA	Locks keyed alike:	
	2 locks in code group	4
	3 to 10 locks in code group	6
	11 to 40 locks in code group	10

Key code	Key type	Minimum number of keys
	41 and over locks in code group	1 per 4 locks or part thereof

3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

General

Handing: Before supply, verify on site, the correct handing of hardware items.

Operation: Make sure working parts are accurately fitted to smooth close bearings, without binding or sticking, free from rattle or excessive play, lubricated if appropriate.

Mounting height

Locks

Cylinders: Fix vertically and with consistent key alignment.

Door stops

Fixing: Fix on the floor, skirting or wall, as appropriate, to prevent the door or door furniture striking the wall or other surface.

Fasteners

Materials: Provide materials compatible with the item being fixed, and of sufficient strength, size and quality to perform their function, and as follows:

- Concealed fasteners: Provide a corrosion-resistant finish to concealed fasteners.
- Exposed fasteners: Match exposed fasteners to the material being fixed.

Security: Locate exposed fasteners to lock furniture on the inside faces of external doors and on the inside faces of internal doors to lockable rooms.

Support:

- Hardware fasteners: Provide appropriate back support, such as lock stiles, blocking, wall noggings and backing plates.
- Hollow metal sections: Provide backing plates drilled and tapped for screw fixing, or provide rivet nuts with machine thread screws. Do not use self-tapping screws or pop rivets.

Floor springs

General: Form a recess in the floor slab for the floor spring box, securely fix and grout the box in place so that the cover plate is flush with the finished floor.

Hinges

Metal frames: Fix hinges using metal thread screws. Do not weld hinges to frames.

Timber doorsets: Install butt hinges in housings equal in depth to the thickness of the hinge leaf (except for hinges designed for mounting without housing), and fix with countersunk screws.

Seals

General: Provide the fixings, rebates, grooves, and clearances required for installation and operation of the seals. Allow seals unwound from coils to settle before use. Install proprietary seals to manufacturer's recommendations and adjust correctly.

3.2 COMPLETION

Adjustment

General: Leave the hardware properly adjusted with working parts in working order, and clean, undamaged, properly adjusted, and lubricated if appropriate.

Opening force performance: To the NCC cited AS 1428.1 (2009).

Automatic door operators: Maintain and adjust the system throughout the defects liability period.

Keys

Contractor's keys: Immediately before practical completion, replace or reset cylinders to which the contractor has had key access during construction to exclude the contractor's keys.

Operation and maintenance manuals

Requirement: Prepare a manual that includes the manufacturer's published recommendations for use, care and maintenance of the hardware provided.

0461B GLAZING

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide glazing, as documented.

Performance

Thermal qualities: U-Value and Solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) as documented.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 STANDARDS

Glazing

Glass type and thickness: To AS 1288 (2021), if no glass type or thickness is nominated.

Materials and installation: To AS 1288 (2021).

Quality requirements for cut-to-size and processed glass: To AS/NZS 4667 (2000).

Roof glazing: To AS 1288 (2021) Section 6.

1.4 SUBMISSIONS

Certification

Design: Submit an engineer's certificate confirming conformance to AS 1288 (2021).

Opacified glass: Submit a report, from the manufacturer certifying that the proposed method of opacifying the glass will not be detrimental to the glass or affect the glass product warranty.

Toughened glass: For each batch of glass, submit certification from the manufacturer of heat soaking.

Installation: Submit certification from the fabricator that the method of glazing, the selection of sealant systems and conditions next to the glass conform to the following:

- Compatible with the edge seal of insulating glass units (IGUs) and self-cleaning glass.
- Will not be detrimental to the long-term structural performance, weathering capabilities and visual qualities of the glass.

Glazier’s data: Submit the glazing subcontractor’s statement certifying the following:

- A satisfactory thermal safety assessment.
- The assembled frame provides the required glazing clearances and tolerances, and maximum and minimum joint configurations, based on the bow, warp and kink characteristics of the required glass types, and is ready for glazing.

Execution details

Site glazing: If site glazing is intended, submit proposals.

Operation and maintenance manuals

Requirement: Submit manual to **COMPLETION**, **Operation and maintenance manuals**.

Products and materials

Safety glazing materials: Submit evidence of conformity to AS 2208 (2023) Appendix A.

Samples

Requirement: Submit samples to PRODUCTS, **GENERAL**, **Samples**.

Shop drawings

Requirement: Submit shop drawings showing the following:

- Method of glazing.
- Rebate depth.
- Edge restraint.
- Clearances and tolerances.

- Glazing gaskets and sealant beads.

Warranties

Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Warranties**.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Samples

Requirement: Provide samples of glazing materials, each at least 200 x 200 mm, showing the visual properties and range of variation, if any, for each of the following:

- Tinted or coloured glass or plastics glazing.
- Surface modified or surface coated glass.
- Patterned or obscured glass or plastics glazing.
- Ceramic-coated glass.
- Wired glass.
- Insulating glass units.
- Mirror glass.

Storage and handling

Storage: Store glass and glazing materials in a clean, dry area unaffected by weather, to the manufacturer's recommendations. Protect from building materials and loose debris such as wet plaster, mortar, paint and welding splatter.

Handling: Handle glass to the manufacturer's recommendations.

2.2 GLAZING

Performance

Glass: Free from defects that detract from appearance or interfere with performance under normal conditions of use.

Plastics glazing: Free from surface abrasions and warranted by the manufacturer for 10 years against yellowing or other colour change, loss of strength and impact resistance, and general deterioration.

Heat soaking

Requirement: Heat soak glass to AS 1288 (2021) clause 3.8.

Standard: To EN 14179-1 (2016).

Marking: To EN 14179-1 (2016) or certified by the manufacturer to AS 1288 (2021) clause 3.8.2.

Safety glazing materials

Standard: To AS 2208 (2023).

Type: Grade A to AS 1288 (2021).

Certification: Required.

- Certification provider: An organisation accredited by the Joint Accreditation System of Australia and New Zealand (JASANZ).

Marking: To AS 2208 (2023) clause 1.6.

Heat-strengthened glass

Requirement: Heat-strengthened annealed glass that requires extra strength and thermal resistance.

Standard: To ASTM C1048 (2018).

Insulating glass units (IGUs)

Requirement: Provide insulating glass units, as documented.

Manufacture, testing and installation: To AS 4666 (2012).

2.3 GLAZING MATERIALS

General

Requirement: Putty, glazing compounds, sealants, gaskets, glazing tapes, spacing strips, spacing tapes, spacers, setting blocks, shims and compression wedges appropriate for the conditions of application and required performance.

Primer

Compatibility: Apply the manufacturer's recommended primer to the surfaces in contact with sealant materials.

2.4 ANCILLARY COMPONENTS AND FITTINGS

Extruded gaskets and seals

General: Provide seals, as documented.

Materials: Non-cellular (solid) elastomeric seals as follows:

- Rubber products: Neoprene, ethylene propylene diene monomer (EPDM) or silicone rubber.
- Flexible polyvinyl chloride (PVC): E type compounds, colourfastness grade B.

Pile weatherstrips

Standard: To AAMA 701/702 (2023).

Material: Polypropylene or equivalent pile and backing, low friction silicone treated, ultraviolet stabilised.

Finned type: A pile weatherseal with a central polypropylene fin bonded into the centre of the backing rod and raised above the pile level.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 GLAZING PROCESSING

General

Processing: Perform required processes on glazing, including cutting, obscuring, silvering and bending. Form necessary holes, including for fixings, equipment, access openings and speaking holes. Process exposed glass edges to a finish not inferior to ground arrised.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Glazing

Requirement: Install the glass as follows:

- Permanently fix in place each piece of glass to withstand the normal loadings and ambient conditions at its location without distortion or damage to glazing materials.
- No transfer of building movements to the glazing.
- Watertight and airtight for external glazing.

Temporary marking: Use a method that does not damage the glazing. Remove marking only after certification and acceptance of the installation.

Toughened glass: Do not cut, work, or permanently mark after toughening. Use installation methods that prevent the glass making direct contact with metals or other non-resilient materials.

Heat-absorbing glass: In locations exposed to direct sunlight, provide wheel cut edges free from damage or blemishes, with minimum feather.

Preglazing

Window assemblies and glazed doors: Supply inclusive of glazing, shop preglazed.

Curtain walls: Supply inclusive of glazing, shop preglazed.

Site glazing

Minimum dimensional requirements: Edge clearance, edge cover, front clearance and back clearance to AS 1288 (2021).

External timber framed glazing: Glaze with putty.

3.3 COMPLETION

Replacement

Requirement: After replacing damaged glass, leave the work clean, polished, free from defects, and in good condition.

Cleaning

Method: Clean with soft clean cloths and clean water, finishing with a clean squeegee. Do not use abrasive, acidic or alkaline materials.

Extent: All frames and glass surfaces internally and externally.

Operation and maintenance manuals

Requirement: Prepare a manual that includes the manufacturers' published recommendations for in-service use.

Warranties

Glazing subcontractor's warranty: Provide an undertaking conditional only on compliance with the manufacturers' recommendations for maintenance, to repair or replace glass and glazing materials that become defective or prove unsuitable for the nominated application; during the warranty period.

Glass manufacturer's warranty: Provide an undertaking, conditional only on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendation for installation and maintenance, to supply replacement glass units to the site for replacement of defective units defined as follows:

- IGU units: Units in which the hermetic seal has failed as evidenced by intrusion of foreign matter, or internal condensation at temperature above 2°C.
- Coated glass units (including coated super insulating glass units): Units in which the metallic coating shows evidence of manufacturing defects, including but not necessarily limited to cracking or peeling, as determined in conformance with ASTM C1048 (2018).

Toughened glass warranty: Provide a manufacturer's warranty that toughened glass supplied for use in curtain walls has been subjected to a heat soaking process that has converted at least 95% of the nickel sulfide content to the stable beta-phase.

0471 THERMAL INSULATION AND PLIABLE MEMBRANES

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide thermal insulation and pliable membrane systems, as documented.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 INTERPRETATION

Definitions

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the following definitions apply:

- Batts: Flexible insulation supplied as factory cut pieces and composed of mineral fibre (glass and rock fibre) or polyester fibre.
- Bio-soluble: A product that dissolves in bodily fluids and is quickly cleared from the lungs.
- Blankets: Flexible insulation supplied as factory cut rolls and composed of mineral fibre (glass and rock fibre) or polyester fibre, and may be combined with reflective facings.
- Fire hazard properties: To NCC (2022) Schedule 1.
- Pliable building membrane: To AS 4200.1 (2017) and equivalent to sarking-type materials as defined in the NCC.
- Thermal insulation terminology: To AS/NZS 4859.1 (2018).
- Vapour permeable (breathable) membrane: A flexible membrane material, normally used for secondary waterproofing that allows for the transmission of water vapour.

1.4 SUBMISSIONS

Fire performance

Fire hazard properties: Submit evidence of conformity to PRODUCTS, **FIRE PERFORMANCE**, **Fire hazard properties**.

Products and materials

Thermal insulation properties: Submit evidence of conformity to AS/NZS 4859.1 (2018) and AS/NZS 4859.2 (2018).

Warranties

Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Warranties**.

1.5 INSPECTION

Notice

Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:

- Insulation or pliable membrane materials after installation and before concealment.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Storage and handling

Labelling: Deliver mineral fibre products to site in packaging with third party mark of conformity indicating product is bio-soluble and not listed as hazardous material in the Safe Work Australia *Hazardous Chemical Information System* (HCIS).

2.2 FIRE PERFORMANCE

Fire hazard properties

Insulation materials: Tested to AS/NZS 1530.3 (1999). Fire hazard indices as follows:

- Spread-of-Flame Index: ≤ 9.

- Smoke-Developed Index: ≤ 8 if Spread-of-Flame Index > 5.

Materials with reflective facing: Tested to AS/NZS 1530.3 (1999) and the recommendations of Appendix A6.

Pliable membranes: Flammability Index ≤ 5 tested to AS 1530.2 (1993).

2.3 MATERIALS

Thermal insulation

Standard: To AS/NZS 4859.1 (2018).

Wet process fibreboard (softboard): To AS/NZS 1859.4 (2018).

Mineral fibre insulation: Bio-soluble and not listed as a hazardous material in the Safe Work Australia *Hazardous Chemical Information System* (HCIS).

Pliable building membranes

Standard: To AS 4200.1 (2017).

Vapour control membranes:

- Vapour barrier:
  . Vapour control classification: Class 1 or Class 2, as documented.
- Vapour permeable (breathable) membrane:
  . Vapour control classification: Class 3 or Class 4, as documented.

Water control (sarking) membrane (other than walls and gables):

- Water control classification: Water barrier.

2.4 COMPONENTS

Fasteners and supports

General: Metallic-coated steel.

Mesh support to roof insulation

Welded safety mesh: To AS/NZS 4389 (2015).

Thermal break strips

Product: Proprietary item.

R-Value (m^2.K/W): ≥ 0.2.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

Thermal insulation

Requirement: To AS 3999 (2015) and BCA (2022) J4D3.

Installation: Firmly butt together with no gaps except as follows:

- Access openings and vents: Do not obstruct.
- Light fittings: To AS/NZS 3000 (2018) clause 4.5.
- Electrical cables: To AS 3999 (2015) clause 2.6.

Pliable building membrane

Installation: To AS 4200.2 (2017) and BCA (2022) J4D3.

3.2 FLOORS

Under suspended framed floors

Fibre batts: Fit tightly between framing members. If other support is not provided, staple nylon twine to the framing and stretch tight.

Rigid cellular insulation boards:

- Installation: Fix to the underside of timber strip flooring. Butt tightly to joists.
- Fixing: Adhesive or mechanical fasteners.

Over suspended framed floors

Rigid cellular insulation boards:

- Installation: Over sheet flooring and between battens supporting a final flooring finish.

Below concrete slab on ground

Preparation: Sand blinding or working slab, as documented.

Rigid cellular insulation boards:

- Laying pattern: Stretcher bond, with edges tightly butted.
- Damp-proof membrane: Lay over insulation.

Over concrete slab on ground

Substrate preparation: Prepare substrate as follows:

- Clean and remove any deposit or finish that may impair adhesion or location of insulation.
- Remove excessive projections.
- Voids and hollows > 10 mm with abrupt edges: Fill with a cement:sand mix not stronger than the substrate or weaker than the bedding.

Rigid cellular insulation boards:

- Laying pattern: Stretcher bond, with edges tightly butted.
- Fixing: Adhesive fix directly to the concrete floor slab.

Under suspended concrete slab

Fibre batts:

- Fixing: Mechanical fasteners and support mesh or nylon twine.

Rigid cellular insulation boards:

- Fixing: Adhesive or mechanical fasteners.
- Joints: Apply reinforced foil tape to all joints.

3.3 WALLS

Framed walls

Fibre batts: Friction fit between framing members. If other support is not provided, staple nylon twine to the framing and stretch tight.

Thermal break strips: Provide to steel framing with lightweight external cladding:

- Screw fixing: Button head screws at 1 m centres.
- Adhesive fixing: Wallboard adhesive walnuts at 1 m centres.

Masonry veneer cavity walls

Rigid cellular insulation boards:

- Installation: Fix boards horizontally with the tongue to the top edge, pushed over prefixed wall ties and held firmly against the wall frame. Keep boards clean, dry and free from mortar and grout. Do not bridge the cavity.
- Fixing: Hex head screws at 450 mm centres.

Flashings: Install flashings before installing insulation. Prevent entry of water behind the insulation boards.

Full masonry cavity walls – external face of internal leaf

Rigid cellular insulation boards:

- Installation: Fix boards horizontally with the tongue to the top edge and firmly against the inner masonry skin. Keep boards clean, dry and free from mortar and grout. Do not bridge the cavity.
- Fixing: Proprietary plastic clips on pre-installed wall ties.

Flashings: Install flashings before installing insulation. Prevent entry of water behind the insulation boards.

Full masonry cavity walls – internal face of internal leaf

Substrate preparation: Conform to the following:

- Clean and remove any deposit or finish that may impair adhesion or location of insulation.
- Remove excessive projections and fill voids and hollows with plaster.
- Maximum surface deviation from a 2400 mm straightedge: 6 mm.

Substrate correction: Skim plaster.

Rigid cellular insulation boards:

- Installation: Fix boards horizontally with staggered vertical joints, all close butted and without crushing.
- Fixing: Proprietary adhesive compatible with the insulation. Apply sufficient pressure to evenly distribute adhesive.

Vapour permeable (breathable) membrane

Requirement: Provide a vapour permeable membrane behind external facing material that does not provide permanent weatherproofing or that may be subject to condensation forming on the internal face, including the following:

- Boards or planks fixed vertically or diagonally.
- Boards or planks fixed in exposed locations if wind driven rain can penetrate the joints.
- Unpainted or unsealed cladding.
- Masonry veneer.

Installation: Run the vapour permeable membrane horizontally on the outer face of external wall framing, over the flashing, from the bottom plate up. Pull taut over the framing and fix to framing members. Seal across the wall cavity at the top.

Horizontal laps: At least 150 mm wide, lapped to make sure water is shed to the outer face of the membrane.

End or vertical overlaps laps: At least 150 mm wide made over framing.

Openings: Run the vapour permeable membrane over the openings and leave covered until windows and doors are installed. Cut the membrane on a 45° diagonal from each corner of the opening, fold the flaps inside and fix to the inside frame of the opening. If the membrane is used to provide a continuous airtight layer, seal all joints with pressure sensitive adhesive tape.

Fixing: Install as follows:

- Timber frames: Metallic-coated clouts, 20 mm long 6 to 8 mm staples or punched multi-point metallic-coated steel brads.
- Steel or aluminium frames: Hex head screws, with either 20 mm diameter washers or through hardboard strips.
- Plywood: Alternatives:
  . Metallic-coated clouts, 20 mm long 6 to 8 mm staples or punched multi-point metallic-coated steel brads at minimum 300 mm centres.
  . Water based contact adhesive with a 50% adhesive cover.

3.4 CEILINGS

Cathedral ceilings

Rigid cellular insulation boards:

- Installation: Lay boards with their long edges at right angles to the rafters and with the tongue pointing up the slope. Start laying at eaves and progress towards the ridge. Cut boards and tightly fit to abutments and penetrations.
- Fixing: Secure temporarily by occasional nailing to the rafters. Fix permanently by nailing counter battens to the rafters.
- Sealing: Seal gaps with polyurethane foam.

Framed ceilings

Fibre batts: Fit tightly between framing members. If support is not otherwise provided, staple nylon twine to the framing and stretch tight.

Suspended ceilings

Fibre batts and blankets: Lay batts/blankets over the ceiling system close butted to each other and to the suspension rods.

3.5 ROOFS

General

Requirement: Provide insulation to the whole of the roof area including skylight shaft walls, except the following:

- Eaves, overhangs, skylights, vents and openings.
- Roofs to outbuildings, garages, and semi-enclosed spaces such as verandahs, porches and carports.

Mesh support to roof insulation

Requirement: Provide support to the following:

- Water control (sarking), vapour barrier or reflective thermal insulation membranes laid over roof framing members that are spaced at more than 900 mm centres.
- Blanket type thermal insulation laid over roof framing members as sound insulation to metal roofing.

Installing welded safety mesh: To AS/NZS 4389 (2015).

Metal roofs

Fibre batts: Fit tightly between framing members.

Fibre blanket for sound insulation: Install over the roof framing, reflective thermal insulation (if any), and mesh support, so that the blanket is in continuous contact with the underside of the metal roofing sheets.

Combined fibre blanket and reflective insulation: Lay facing reflective insulation face downwards over safety mesh.

Thermal break strips: Provide to steel framing supporting metal sheet roofing.

- Screw fixing: Button head screws at 1 m centres.
- Adhesive fixing: Wallboard adhesive walnuts at 1 m centres.

Waterproof membrane roofs

Preparation: Make sure membrane is clean and free of loose material. Lay separation layer over membrane with edges lapped 300 mm and turned up at upstands and penetrations.

Rigid cellular insulation boards: Lay boards in brick pattern with shiplap edges pushed together firmly, cut neatly around penetrations and extend up upstands.

Pliable building membranes

Vapour barrier: Lay over the roof framing with sufficient sag to allow the bulk insulation to achieve its full thickness. Overlap all edges 150 mm and seal all joints with pressure sensitive adhesive tape.

Water control (sarking) membrane: Provide sarking under tile and shingle roofing.

0511B LINING

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide internal lining systems, as documented.

Performance

Requirement: Provide lining system with a surface that is:

- Resistant to impacts expected in use.
- Resistant to moisture encountered under expected environmental conditions.
- Free of irregularities.
- A suitable substrate for the nominated final finish.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 INTERPRETATION

Abbreviations

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the following abbreviation applies:

- MDF: Medium density fibreboard.

Definitions

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the definitions given in AS/NZS 4491 (1997) and the following apply:

- Decorative overlaid wood panels: Particleboard or fibreboard with a bonded decorative finishing surface such as thermosetting resin (low pressure melamine), PVC film, paper foils or wood veneer.
- Dry process fibreboard: Panel material with a nominal thickness of 1.5 mm or greater, manufactured from lignocellulosic fibres (derived from wood or other materials) with application of heat and pressure, the bond of which is derived from a synthetic adhesive added to the fibres and the panels are manufactured with a forming moisture content less than 20%.
- Fibre cement sheet linings: Treated cellulose fibre in a matrix of cement and sand autoclaved sheet, sealed on one side.
- High pressure decorative laminates (HPDL):
  - . Panels consisting of core layers impregnated with phenolic and/or aminoplastic resins and a surface layer(s) impregnated with aminoplastic resins (mainly melamine resins).
  - . Sheets consisting of a decorative face and layers of fibrous sheet material (e.g. paper) impregnated with thermosetting resins and bonded together under heat and pressure of at least 5 MPa.
- Wet process fibreboard: Panel material with a nominated thickness of 1.5 mm or greater, manufactured from lignocellulosic fibres (derived from wood or other materials) with application of heat and/or pressure, the bond of which is derived from the felting of the fibres and the panels are manufactured with a forming moisture content greater than 20%.

1.4 TOLERANCES

Permitted deviations

Bearing surface of finished framing:

- Gypsum lining: To AS/NZS 2589 (2017) clause 4.2.2.
- Other lining: 4 mm from a 1.8 m straightedge.

1.5 SUBMISSIONS

Fire performance
Fire hazard properties: Submit evidence of conformity to PRODUCTS, **FIRE PERFORMANCE**, **Fire hazard properties**.

Warranties
Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Error! Reference source not found.**.

1.6 INSPECTION

Notice
Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:

- Substrate or framing before installation of linings.
- Finished surface of installation before applying:
  . Sealer.
  . Finish coatings or decorative papers.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Storage and handling
Requirement: Store lining stacked in pallets horizontally on a smooth, level surface. Prevent distortion or moisture ingress.

Timber or fibreboard panels: Store off the ground in a well-ventilated area.

Handling: Do not drag sheets across each other or across other materials. Protect edges, corners and surface from damage.

Certification
Timber based products: Label panels under the authority of a recognised certification scheme to *0185 Timber products, finishes and treatment*, as applicable to the product. Locate the label on faces or edges that will be concealed in the works.

2.2 FIRE PERFORMANCE

Fire hazard properties
Group number: To AS 5637.1 (2015).

2.3 PLASTERBOARD

General
Standard: To AS/NZS 2588 (2018).

2.4 FIBRE CEMENT

General
Standard: To AS/NZS 2908.2 (2000).

Wall and ceiling linings: Type B category 2.

Minimum thickness: 4.5 mm.

2.5 TONGUE AND GROOVE BOARDS

Hardwood
Standard: To AS 2796.1 (1999).

Seasoned cypress pine
Standard: To AS 1810 (1995).

Softwood
Standard: To AS 4785.1 (2002).

2.6 PLYWOOD AND BLOCKBOARD

General
General interior use: To AS/NZS 2270 (2006).

General exterior use and areas requiring moisture resistance: To AS/NZS 2271 (2004).

Visible surfaces with a clear finish: Veneer quality A.

Other visible surfaces: Veneer quality B.

Back/face veneer: Veneer quality C or D.

Presealed plywood: Plywood pre-sealed both sides and edges with a machine applied sealer.

2.7 PARTICLEBOARD

General

Standard: To AS 1859.1 (2017).

2.8 ADHESIVES, SEALANTS AND FASTENERS

Adhesives

For wallboards: Gunnable synthetic rubber/resin based mastic contact adhesive formulated for bonding flooring and wallboards to a variety of substrates.

Sealants

Fire-resisting sealant: Non-hardening sealant, compatible with the materials to be sealed and having a fire-resistance rating equal to that of the building element it seals.

Acoustic sealant: Non-hardening sealant compatible with the materials to be sealed.

Fasteners

Steel nails: Hot-dip galvanized.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION GENERALLY

Conditions

Requirement: Do not start lining work until the building or installation area is enclosed and weathertight, and all wet trades have been completed.

Preparation

Requirement: Before fixing linings, check and adjust the alignment of substrates or framing, if necessary.

Substrate: Make sure substrates are plumb, level, in true alignment and to the lining manufacturer's recommendations.

Timber, steel framing and battened masonry: To AS/NZS 2589 (2017) clause 4.2.

Pre-conditioning

General: Acclimatise timber panels in the in-service conditions for 2 to 3 weeks before installing.

Battens

General: Fix at each crossing with structural framing members, to solid walls or ceiling support. Provide wall plugs in solid substrates.

Ceiling linings

General: Do not install until the timber roof structure has been fully loaded for at least 14 days.

Accessories and trim

General: Provide accessories and trim as necessary to complete the installation.

Adhesives

General: Provide adhesive types appropriate for the purpose, and apply them so they transmit the loads imposed without causing discolouration of the finished surfaces.

Fire-resisting and acoustic rated installations

Sealing: Apply sealant to the manufacturer's recommendations and as follows:

- Around services pipes and penetrations.
- Electrical outlets and recessed lights: Line back and sides of fixture with plasterboard and seal around fixture junction with sealant.
- Around perimeter of lining panels: Provide continuous runs of sealant.

3.2 PLASTERBOARD

Installation

Gypsum plasterboard and fibre reinforced gypsum lining: To AS/NZS 2589 (2017).

Level of finish and jointing: To AS/NZS 2589 (2017) clause 3.1.

Supports

General: Install timber battens or proprietary cold-formed galvanized steel furring channels as follows:

- If framing member spacing exceed the recommended spacing.
- If direct fixing of plasterboard is not possible, due to the arrangement or alignment of the framing or substrate.
- If the lining is the substrate for tiled finishes.
- If required for penetrations for services, including mechanical grilles and lighting fixtures.
- If required to support fixtures.

Multiple sheet layers

Application: Fire-resisting and acoustic rated walls.

Joints: Fill and flush up all joints and fasteners in each layer and caulk up perimeters and penetrations before installing following layers. Stagger all sheet joints by minimum 200 mm.

Joints

Flush joints: Provide recessed edge sheets and finish flush using perforated paper reinforcing tape.

Butt joints: Make joints over framing members or provide back blocking.

External corner joints: Make joints over metallic-coated steel corner beads.

Dry joints: Provide square edged sheet and finish with a PVC-U joining section.

Control joints: Provide purpose-made metallic-coated control joint beads at not more than 12 m centres in walls and ceilings and to coincide with structural control joints.

Wet areas: Install additional supports, flashings, trim and sealants as required.

Joints in tiled areas: Do not apply a topping coat after bedding perforated paper tape in bedding compound.

3.3 FIBRE CEMENT

Installation

Joints and layout: Run sheets across the framing members. In flush jointed applications, stagger end joints in a brick pattern and locate them on framing members, away from the corners of large openings. Provide supports at edges and joints.

Supports

General: Install timber battens or proprietary cold-formed galvanized steel furring channels as follows:

- If framing member spacing exceed the recommended spacing.
- If direct fixing of fibre cement is not possible, due to the arrangement or alignment of the framing or substrate.
- If the lining is the substrate for tiled finishes.
- If required for penetrations for services, including mechanical grilles and lighting fixtures.
- If required to support fixtures.

Fixing

Timber framed construction: Nail only or combine with adhesive.

Steel framed construction: Screw only or combine with adhesive.

Wall framing: Conform to the following:

- Do not fix to top and bottom plates or noggings.
- In tiled areas: Provide an extra row of noggings immediately above wall-to-floor flashings. Fix sheet at 150 mm centres to each stud and around the perimeter of the sheet.

Masonry wall construction: Conform to the following:

- Direct fixing: Adhesive fix to the masonry except where lining forms a substrate for tiled finish.
- Furring channels: Fix using screw and/or adhesive.

Ceilings: Fix using screw and/or adhesive to ceiling furring members. Do not fix sheets directly to the bottom chords of trusses.

- Ceiling battens: Fix at 600 mm maximum centres.

Wet areas: Do not use adhesive fixing alone.

Multiple sheet layers

Application: Fire-resisting and acoustic rated walls.

Joints: Fill and flush up all joints and fasteners in each layer and caulk up perimeters and penetrations before installing following layers. Stagger all sheet joints by minimum 200 mm.

Joints

Joint width:

- Butt joints: 1 to 2 mm.
- Expressed joints: 10 mm maximum.

Joint backing for expressed joints: Black self-adhesive polyurethane tape.

Flush joints: Provide recessed edge sheets and finish flush using perforated paper reinforcing tape.

External corner joints: Make joints over metallic-coated steel corner beads.

Dry joints: Provide square edged sheet and finish with a PVC-U joining section.

Control joints: Provide control joints to coincide with structural control joints and as follows:

- Walls:
  - . Timber framing: ≤ 7.2 m centres.
  - . Steel framing 0.55 to 0.75 mm BMT: ≤ 9.0 m centres.
  - . Steel framing 0.8 to 1.6 mm BMT: ≤ 6.0 m centres.
- Ceilings: To divide into bays not larger than 10.8 x 7.2 m.
- Soffit linings: To divide into bays not larger than 4.2 x 4.2 m or 5.6 x 3.6 m.
- Control joint beads: Purpose-made metallic-coated.
- Support: Provide framing parallel to the joint on each side. Do not fix the lining to abutting building surfaces.

Wet areas: Provide additional supports, flashings, trim and sealants as required.

Joints in tiled areas: Bed perforated paper tape in bedding compound. Do not apply a topping coat.

- Control joints:
  - . Timber framing: Not more than 4.2 m centres and space to suit joints required in tiling.
  - . Steel framing: Not more than 4.8 m centres and space to suit joints required in tiling.
- Internal corners: Reinforce with metallic-coated steel angles. In corners subject to continuous moisture, flash over the angle and under the sheeting with continuous bitumen coated aluminium flashing.

3.4 TONGUE AND GROOVE BOARDS

Installation

General: Conform to the following:

- Horizontal installation: Provide single lengths of boards if possible.
- Vertical installation: Provide single lengths only.

Stained or clear finished boards: Select board to give a random pattern. At corners, return the same board to give a continuous grain pattern.

Fixing: Nail twice to each crossing, except for secret nailed profiles.

Secret nail fixing: Fix nail diagonally through the tongue only. Punch nails to maintain correct alignment of the next board.

Nailheads: Treat visible nailheads as follows:

- In stained or clear finishes: Drive flush.
- In opaque finishes: Punch below surface and fill flush with putty after the surface has been primed.

Corners and junctions: Allow for movement at all corners and junctions.

Joints

Requirement: Select board lengths to give minimum number of joints.

End grain joints: Install boards so that butt joints are in compression.

Internal corners: Scribe.

External corners: Mitre.

3.5 TIMBER PANEL LINING

General

Installation: Set out in even panels with joints coinciding with framing members. Fit and fix panels and trim plumb, level and in true alignment of face and grain.

Fixing:

- Plywood and hardboard: Wallboard adhesive or pin fixed to timber frame, screw fixed to steel frame. Punch pin heads just below surface.
- Laminated plastic: Wallboard adhesive.

Plywood

Expansion joints: Provide a 2 to 3 mm gap at edges of linings and as follows:

- 2 to 3 mm gap at each panel joint, or
- 6 to 9 mm every 3.6 m, or
- 8 to 12 mm every 4.8 m.

Areas with an expected high level of internal moisture: Provide a gap of 4 to 6 mm every 1.2 m.

3.6 TRIM AND ACCESSORIES

General

Requirement: Provide trim such as beads, mouldings and stops to make neat junctions between lining components, finishes and adjacent surfaces.

Proprietary items: Provide complete with installation accessories.

Timber and MDF trim: Fix using full length so that trim is secure and without movement. Where nail or screw fixings are used, make sure fastener finishes sufficiently below face of trim so that stopping piece finishes flush with the face.

3.7 COMPLETION

General

Damaged or marked lining and components: Replace.

Exposed surfaces: Touch up shop applied finishes and restore damaged or marked areas.

Timber panels: If appearance is not uniform, replace panels.

Cleaning: Clean completed surfaces to remove irregularities and leave panels smooth and clean, to the manufacturer’s recommendations. If required, sand with fine paper to remove irregularities and refinish panel surface.

- Debris and unused material: Remove from site.

0520 PARTITIONS - COMBINED

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide partition systems, as documented.

Performance

Strength and stability: To remain stable, and without rattle and signs of deflection or permanent deformation under normal conditions of use, including the slamming of doors.

Serviceability: To support imposed dead loads, seismic loads, wind loads, including designated eccentric loads and not to deflect in excess of the following, where H is the height of the partition:

- The lesser of H/240 or 30 mm for partitions subjected to wind loads and lined with flexible material.
- The lesser of H/360 or 20 mm for partitions subjected to wind loads and lined with brittle materials.
- H/500 for eccentric loads.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 INTERPRETATION

Definitions

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the following definitions apply:

- Partition - fully demountable: A partition system in which any component may be demounted without damage, using only small hand tools, and subsequently reassembled without cutting, trimming or refinishing.
- Partition - glazed: A partition system consisting of a suite of exposed sections forming door and window frames, ceiling channels, sills, glazing and accessories; and generally intended for use in conjunction with framed and lined partition systems.
- Partition - semi demountable: A partition system in which the major components are designed to be removed and re-used but panels or linings, which are likely to be damage during removal, are not.

1.4 TOLERANCES

Demountable partitions

Deviation (from true grid lines and planes): 1:1000 to a maximum of 3 mm.

Misalignment (of adjoining surfaces at panel junctions): 1 mm.

Panel thickness: ±0.5 mm.

Length and width: 0.1% of the dimension or 0.5 mm, whichever is the greater.

Flatness, twist, winding and bow: 1 mm deviation from a 2.4 m straightedge placed in any position.

Maximum deviation of edges from the intended true line: ±1 mm.

Framed and lined partitions

Finished framing: To AS/NZS 2589 (2017) clause 4.2.2.

1.5 SUBMISSIONS

Certification

Installed partitions: Submit a certificate from an independent testing authority as evidence that the partition system installed conforms to the documented weighted sound reduction index (R_w).

Toughened glass: For each batch of glass, submit certification from the manufacturer as evidence of heat soaking.

Fire performance

Fire hazard properties: Submit evidence of conformity to PRODUCTS, **FIRE PERFORMANCE**, **Fire hazard properties**.

Fire-resistance level: Submit evidence of conformity to PRODUCTS, **FIRE PERFORMANCE**, **Fire-resistance of building elements**.

Operation and maintenance manuals

Requirement: Submit manual to **COMPLETION**, **Operation and maintenance manuals**.

Products and materials

Manufacturer's data: Submit manufacturer's standard product literature for each system type.

Safety glazing materials: Submit evidence of conformity to AS 2208 (2023) Appendix A.

Type tests: Submit results as follows:

- Impact resistance.
- Pressure resistance.
- Surface indentation resistance.
- Weighted sound reduction index (R_w): To AS/NZS ISO 717.1 (2004).

Records

Timber framing moisture content: Submit records of moisture content values.

Samples

Requirement: Submit samples to PRODUCTS, **GENERAL**, **Samples**.

Shop drawings

General: Submit shop drawings to a scale that best describes the detail, showing the following:

- Plans, sections and elevations of the installation.
- Full size sections of members and details of partition intersections and terminations.
- Dimensions, clearances, tolerances, and provision for expansion.
- Junctions and trim to adjoining surfaces.
- Doors (note if supplied by others) and frames, including door seals, and door stops coordinated with documented door thicknesses.
- Coordination with documented door hardware.
- Glass types, thicknesses and glazing methods.
- Details of safety markings that make glass visible.
- Glass processing required for fixing hardware to frameless glass doors.
- Methods of fixing partitions.
- Details of acoustic treatments to joints.
- Method of providing reticulation of services, access to services, and service outlets.
- Performance data of components and assemblies.
- Specification of materials and finishes.

Subcontractors

General: Submit names and contact details of proposed suppliers and installers.

Substrate acceptance: Submit evidence of the installer's acceptance of the wall, floor and ceiling substrate before starting installation.

Tests

Site tests: Submit results, as follows:

- Airborne sound insulation rating of completed installation.

Warranties

Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Warranties**.

1.6 INSPECTION

Notice

Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:

- Set-out before installation.
- Partition framing before installation of linings and finishes.
- Completion of a prototype.
- Framed and lined partitions ready to receive the framed and glazed component.
- Completion of installation.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Storage and handling

Glass and glazing materials: Store in a clean, dry area unaffected by weather and to the manufacturer's recommendations. Protect from building materials and loose debris such as wet plaster, mortar, paint and welding spatter.

Handling glass: To the manufacturer's recommendations and without damage.

Samples

Demountable partitions: For each partition type, provide samples of the following:

- Each panel type in the selected finish and colour, at least 300 x 300 mm.
- Each type of cover strip, door frame, ceiling channel, bead and other exposed components of the partition suite, in the selected finish and colour, at least 100 mm long.
- Each type of timber veneer, showing the limits of the range of variation in colour, grain pattern, and other visible characteristics, at least 300 x 300 mm.
- Each type of glass, at least 100 x 100 mm.
- Floor and ceiling fixings and adjustments.
- Suite of electrical devices and cover plates if provided as part of a proprietary system.
- Skirting, skirting duct, and skirting duct stop ends, returns and removable covers, at least 100 mm long.

Glazing framing systems: Provide samples of the following:

- Prefinished production extrusions showing the limits of the range of variation in the selected finish, at least 100 mm long.
- Joints made by proposed techniques.
- Skirting, skirting duct, and skirting duct stop ends, returns and removable covers, at least 100 mm long.

Glazing materials: Provide samples of glazing materials, each at least 200 x 200 mm, showing specified visual properties and the range of variation, if any, for each of the following:

- Tinted or coloured glass or plastics glazing.
- Surface modified or surface coated glass.
- Patterned or obscured glass or plastics glazing.
- Ceramic-coated glass.
- Mirrored glass.

Sealants

General: Sealant types appropriate for the partition's documented acoustic rating and fire-resistance level, and compatible with partition materials and building substrate.

2.2 FIRE PERFORMANCE

Fire hazard properties

Group number: To AS 5637.1 (2015).

Fire-resistance of building elements

Fire-resistance level: Tested to AS 1530.4 (2014).

2.3 TESTING

General

Impact resistance, glazed partitions: To withstand impact without permanent deformation, damage, failure of fastenings.

- Test method: Use the apparatus and procedure of the shot-bag test of AS 2208 (2023) Appendix D.

Impact resistance, lightweight partitions: To withstand impact without permanent deformation, damage, failure of fastenings.

- Test method: Use the apparatus and procedure of the sand-bag test of the NCC cited ASTM E695 (2003).

Pressure resistance: To withstand a uniformly distributed load normal to the plane of the partition without permanent deformation or damage or excessive deflection.

- Test method: To the NCC cited ASTM E72 (2015).

2.4 GLAZED PARTITIONS

General

Requirement: Proprietary non-load bearing glazed partition suite comprising main frames, door frames, sills, ceiling channels and other extrusions and accessories to form a complete and finished system, as documented.

Frames

Aluminium extrusions: To AS/NZS 1866 (1997).

Partition components

Tests

Weighted sound reduction index (R_w) for proprietary double glazed systems: Interpolation between test results for similar systems is acceptable, subject to the following:

- Dimensional (thickness or width) differences do not exceed a ratio of 1:1.5.
- Each tested system differs from the proposed system by not more than one variable from the following elements:
  - . Cavity: Width dimension.
  - . Cavity reveal: Acoustic absorption treatment.
  - . First panel: Glass type, glass thickness.
  - . Mounting: Type, seal type.
  - . Second panel: Glass type, glass thickness.

2.5 GLASS

Standards

Glass type and thickness: To AS 1288 (2021), if no glass type or thickness is nominated.

Materials and installation: To AS 1288 (2021).

Quality requirements for cut-to-size and processed glass: To AS/NZS 4667 (2000).

Terminology for work on glass: To AS/NZS 4668 (2000).

Performance

Glass: Free from defects that detract from appearance or interfere with performance under normal conditions of use.

Plastics glazing: Free from surface abrasions, and warranted by the manufacturer for 10 years against yellowing or other colour change, loss of strength and impact resistance, and general deterioration.

Heat soaking

Requirement: Heat soak the following:

- Toughened glass.
- Heat strengthened glass with a surface compression greater than 52 MPa tested to ASTM C1279 (2023).

Standard: To EN 14179-1 (2016).

Marking: To EN 14179-1 (2016) or certified by the manufacturer to AS 1288 (2021) clause 3.8.2.

Safety glazing materials

Standard: To AS 2208 (2023).

Type: Grade A to AS 1288 (2021).

Certification: Required.

- Certification provider: An organisation accredited by the Joint Accreditation System of Australia and New Zealand (JASANZ).

Marking: To AS 1288 (2021) clause 5.23.

Unacceptable blemishes in heat-treated flat glass (including tinted and coated glass)

Standard: To AS/NZS 4667 (2000).

Ceramic-coated glass

Description: Heat strengthened or toughened glass with a coloured ceramic coating fused to and made an integral part of the surface to ASTM C1048 (2018), Condition B.

2.6 GLAZING MATERIALS

General

Requirement: Putty, glazing compounds, sealants, gaskets, glazing tapes, spacing strips, spacing tapes, spacers, setting blocks, shims and compression wedges appropriate for the conditions of application and required performance.

Glazing tapes
Standards: To AAMA 800 (2016), Products coded 804.3, 806.3 or 807.3, as applicable.

Jointing materials
General: Jointing and pointing materials that are compatible with each other and with the contact surfaces and non-staining to finished surfaces. Do not provide bituminous materials on absorbent surfaces.

Primer
Compatibility: Apply the manufacturer's recommended primer to the surfaces in contact with sealant materials.

Extruded gaskets and seals
General: Provide seals, as documented.

Materials: Non-cellular (solid) elastomeric seals as follows:

- Rubber products: Neoprene, ethylene propylene diene monomer (EPDM) or silicone rubber.
- Flexible polyvinyl chloride (PVC): E type compounds, colourfastness grade B.

2.7 ALUMINIUM FRAME FINISHES

Powder coatings
Application to aluminium and aluminium alloy substrates for architectural applications: To AAMA 2603 (2022), AAMA 2604 (2022) and AAMA 2605 (2022) as appropriate and AS 3715 (2002).

Anodising
Standard: To AS 1231 (2000).

Thickness: 15 to 20 µm.

2.8 PLENUM BAFFLES

General
Requirement: Plenum baffles that maintain the documented fire-resistance level and acoustic performance of the partitions.

Types
Bulk insulation: Layers of bulk insulation batts compressed between the top of the partition and the slab soffit.

Flexible sheet insulation: Mass loaded vinyl sheeting hung as a curtain from the slab soffit.

Plasterboard: Plasterboard sheets bonded together (if more than one layer).

3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

Preparation
Substrate: Prepare the substrate to receive the partitions.

Carpet: Fix bottom tracks over polyethylene film. Prevent carpet threads from pulling if drilling or installing fasteners.

Protection
General: Protect existing work from damage during the installation and rectify any damage. Provide temporary coverings if required.

Pre-conditioning
General: Acclimatise wood-based system components in the in-service conditions for a minimum period of two weeks before assembly.

Set-out
General: Set out the partition grid on the centreline of framing members, and to coincide with the ceiling grid and other major building grid, as applicable.

3.2 DEMOUNTABLE PARTITIONS

Partition erection
General: Install demountable partitions to the manufacturer’s recommendations and as follows:

- Plumb, level, on correct alignments, and firmly fixed.
- Supported by fixing the top plate to the ceiling structure or slab soffit, or stabilised by lapping and fastening intersecting or butting plates together.
- With partition panels firmly butted to one another and to adjacent construction.

Building movements: Provide clearances or deflection heads so that partitions are not damaged by structural building movements including long-term slab deflection.

- If fire-resistance levels or acoustic ratings are required, provide a resilient foam or mastic seal having properties equal to those required for the partition.

Fixing

Concealed fixings: For demountable items, provide fixings capable of being repeatedly removed and replaced without damage to finishes.

Fixing to masonry: Provide masonry anchors of expansion or chemical grout type. Do not use explosive-driven fastenings.

Fixing to suspended ceilings: Provide top support to the partition without damage to the ceiling components.

Splicing

General: Splice plates at ends to maintain continuity and alignment.

Sound transmission

General: Seal flanking sound transmission paths during installation, including junctions between partition panels and between panels and other building surfaces, air gaps around doorsets, recesses, such as pelmets and blind boxes, and at cut-outs for services to preserve the sound reduction properties of partitions. Avoid cut-outs back-to-back or next to each other.

Sealing methods: Use appropriate sealing methods, including purpose-made solid profiled inserts, durable resilient gaskets or closed cell foam strips. Provide solid resilient materials in preference to foamed or fluid applied materials whenever possible.

Control joints

General: At control joints, provide proprietary nested or tongue and groove panel joints to accommodate expansion and contraction without separation or loss of acoustic performance. Do not bridge control joints with continuous partition system components.

Service access

General: Conceal reticulation of associated building services, either within cavities in the partition structure or within ducted skirtings supplied as part of the partition system, or both. Provide removable or demountable components of the partition system for access to services concealed within partition cavities.

Site tests

Weighted standardised level difference ($D_{nT,w}$): To AS/NZS ISO 717.1 (2004).

3.3 FRAMED AND LINED PARTITIONS

Partition erection

General: Install partitions plumb, level, on their correct alignment, and firmly fixed.

Building movements:

- Provide clearances or deflection heads so that partitions are not damaged by structural building movements including long-term slab deflection.
- If fire-resistance levels or acoustic ratings are required, provide a resilient foam or mastic seal with properties equal to those required for the partition.

Suspended slabs: Provide deflection heads.

Structural floor control joints

General: Do not run or fix partitions framing across control joints.

Acoustic rated partitions

General: Isolate the frames from floors, ceilings and vertical abutments with beads of non-hardening sealant compatible with the materials to be sealed.

Trim

General: Provide trim such as beads, mouldings, stops and skirtings to make neat junctions between lining components, finishes and adjacent surfaces.

Sealing fire-resisting and acoustic rated partitions

General: Apply sealant to the manufacturer's recommendations and as follows:

- Around services pipes and penetrations.
- Electrical outlets and recessed lights: Line back and sides of fixture with plasterboard and seal around fixture junction with sealant.
- Around perimeter of lining panels: Provide continuous runs of sealant.

3.4 LIGHT STEEL FRAMES IN FRAMED AND LINED PARTITIONS

Tracks

General: Conform to the following:

- Fix bottom tracks to floor substrate.
- Fix top wall tracks to suspended ceiling grid or as documented.
- Fix deflection head tracks to the structural soffit above.

Fixing to masonry: Provide masonry anchors of expansion or chemical grout type. Do not use explosive-driven fastenings.

Fixing to metal deck roofs: Provide for vertical uplift movement, as documented.

Fixing to suspended ceilings: Provide intermediate support and bracing at maximum 1500 mm centres and at all load concentrations, doorways and jamb studs.

Seismic movement: If required, do not butt wall tracks or deflection heads against each other. Provide 10 mm clearance between tracks, or as documented.

Track fixing: Fix top and bottom tracks at 600 mm maximum centres generally, and 100 mm from ends. Splice plates at ends to maintain continuity and alignment.

Stud framing

General: Provide studs in single lengths without splices. Rotate intermediate studs into tracks for friction fixing. Screw fix jamb studs, corner studs and wall intersection studs to tracks.

Fixing: Fix noggings at 1350 mm maximum centres vertically and as required for skirtings and wet area lining. Make sure that faces of noggings and studs are accurately aligned.

Lintels: Install a stiffened top plate lintel for spans of 1800 mm or greater.

Curved partitions

Tracks: [complete/delete]

Stud spacing: Conform to the sheeting manufacturer’s recommendations for curved partitions.

Jambs

General: Install boxed double studs at jambs and heads to all openings.

Additional frame support

General: Provide frame support for fixing the following:

- Floor and wall mounted fixed joinery units, furniture and equipment.
- All wet area fittings and fixtures.
- All grabrails and handrails.

Timber nogging: Provide 240 x 40 mm timber nogging with proprietary stud fixing brackets for wall-hung sanitary fittings.

Stud stiffening: Provide stud stiffening to support wall-hung joinery units and equipment with:

- Full height close fitting timber inserts.
- Boxed steel lipped studs.

Stud service holes

General: Use factory pre-cut flared holes, or provide site cut holes punched or drilled on the centreline of the member and fit proprietary plastic bushes or grommets. Splice additional stiffening to studs if site cut service holes exceed 1/3 the depth of the member.

Metal separation

General: Isolate non-ferrous service pipes and accessories from the metal framing.

Earthing

Permanent earthing: Required.

Temporary earthing: Provide temporary earthing during erection until the permanent earthing is installed.

Cavity walls

General: If bridging is nominated, provide to the manufacturer’s recommendations.

Staggered stud framed walls

General: Provide studs staggered at 300 mm centres set in oversized top and bottom plates so that each face has stud fixings at 600 mm centres.

3.5 LIGHT TIMBER FRAMES IN FRAMED AND LINED PARTITIONS

Moisture content

General: Do not install framing that does not meet the following values tested to AS/NZS 1080.1 (2012):

- Air conditioned buildings: 8 to 10%.
- Intermittently heated buildings: 10 to 12.5%.
- Unheated buildings: 12 to 15%.

Framing

General: Construct wall frames to AS 1684.4 (2010) Section 6, as appropriate for internal walls.

Double faced walls: Provide gauged timbers in studs, noggings and plates.

3.6 AUTOCLAVED AERATED CONCRETE (AAC) PANELS IN FRAMED AND LINED PARTITIONS

Support framing

General: Install deflection head track and base angle to building structure, with mechanical fasteners at maximum 600 mm centres.

Cutting

General: Cut panels as required for recommended clearance between top of panel and structural soffit, and where panels abut columns and adjacent construction.

Cut edges: Protect exposed reinforcing with anti-corrosion agent to manufacturer's recommendations.

AAC panel installation

General: Install panels to manufacturer's recommendations and as follows:

- Minimum 35 mm into the deflection head track.
- Secure into the base angle.
- Progressively apply panel adhesive to vertical joints between adjacent panels.
- Fit panels snugly together to fully bed adhesive.

Standard: To AS 5146.3 (2018).

Control joints

General: Provide minimum 10 mm wide control joints as follows:

- Spaced at maximum 6 m centres in continuous partition runs.
- Where AAC panels abut adjacent building elements.

Sealant

Locations: Install fire-resisting and acoustic sealant as documented and as follows:

- At both sides of deflection head track at junction with structural soffit.
- At all control joints.
- At services penetrations.

3.7 PLASTERBOARD LINING IN FRAMED AND LINED PARTITIONS

Installation

Gypsum plasterboard and fibre reinforced gypsum lining: To AS/NZS 2589 (2017).

Multiple sheet layers

Application: Fire-resisting and acoustic rated partitions.

Joints:

- Fill and flush up all joints and fixings in each layer and caulk up perimeters and penetrations before installing following layers.
- Stagger all sheet joints: Minimum 200 mm.

Joints and joint treatment

General: Install joint accessories as documented, in conformance with manufacturer's recommendations. Install plumb, level and true to line.

Flush joints: Use joint reinforcing tape bedded in joint compound with recessed edge sheets and finish flush.

Butt joints: Make joints over framing members or provide back blocking.

External corner joints: Bed purpose fabricated perforated metallic-coated steel corner beads in joint compound.

Ceiling junctions: Install purpose fabricated perforated metallic-coated steel shadowline to top of partition.

Sheet metal partition end caps: Provide purpose fabricated perforated metallic-coated steel end caps, sized for partition thickness and bedded in joint compound.

MDF end caps: Provide recessed edge sheets and finish flush using joint reinforcing tape and joint compound.

Dry joints: Provide square edged sheet and finish with a PVC-U joining section.

Control joints: Provide purpose-made perforated metallic-coated control joint beads at not more than 12 m centres in partitions and to coincide with structural control joints. Bed in joint compound.

Wet areas: Provide additional supports, flashings, trim and sealants as required.

Joints in tiled areas: Bed reinforcing tape in joint compound. Do not apply a topping coat.

3.8 FIBRE CEMENT LINING IN FRAMED AND LINED PARTITIONS

Installation

General: Install as follows:

- Run sheets across the framing members.
- In flush jointed applications, stagger end joints in a brick pattern and locate joints on framing members, away from the corners of large openings.
- Provide supports at edges and joints.
- Do not fix to top and bottom plates or noggings.

Timber framing: Nail only or combined with adhesive.

Steel framing: Screw only or combined with adhesive.

Tiled and wet areas: Provide an extra row of noggings immediately above wall-to-floor flashings. Fix sheet at 150 mm centres to each stud and around the perimeter of the sheet. Do not use adhesive fixing alone.

Multiple sheet layers

Application: Fire-resisting and acoustic rated partitions.

Joints:

- Fill and flush up all joints and fixings in each layer and caulk up perimeters and penetrations before installing following layers.
- Stagger all sheet joints: Minimum 200 mm.

Joints and joint treatment

General: Install joint accessories as documented, in conformance with manufacturer’s recommendations. Install plumb, level and true to line.

Flush joints: Use joint reinforcing tape bedded in joint compound with recessed edge sheets and finish flush.

External corner joints: Bed purpose fabricated perforated metallic corner beads in joint compound.

Ceiling junctions: Install purpose fabricated perforated metallic-coated steel shadowline to top of partition.

Sheet metal partition end caps: Provide purpose fabricated perforated metallic-coated steel end caps, sized for partition thickness and bedded in joint compound.

MDF end caps: Provide recessed edge sheets and finish flush using joint reinforcing tape and joint compound.

Dry joints: Use square edged sheet and finish with a PVC-U joining section.

Control joints: Provide control joints to coincide with structural control joints and as follows:

- Walls: ≤ 7.2 m centres.
- Control joint beads: Purpose-made metallic-coated.
- Support: Provide framing parallel to the joint on each side. Do not fix the lining to abutting building surfaces.

Wet areas: Provide additional supports, flashings, trim and sealants as required.

Joints in tiled areas: Bed reinforcing tape in joint compound. Do not apply a topping coat.

- Control joints: At maximum 4.2 m centres and spaced to suit joints required in tiling.
- Internal corners: Reinforce with metallic-coated steel angles. In corners subject to continuous moisture, flash over the angle and under the sheeting with continuous bitumen coated aluminium flashing.

3.9 GLAZED PARTITION SYSTEMS

General

Requirement: Conform to manufacturer’s recommendations and assembly details.

Frame erection

Frames: Install main frames, sills, ceiling channels, door and window frames and other framing members as follows:

- Plumb, level, square, straight and true.
- Fixed or anchored to the building structure.
- Isolated from any building loads, including loads caused by structural deflection or shortening.
- Joints tightly fitted and neatly aligned.
- Door and window openings accurately sized.
- Use concealed fixings.

Sealant

Acoustic sealant: If documented or if required to maintain rated acoustic performance, bed sill and ceiling channels in acoustic sealant.

Glass processing

Processing: Perform required processes on glass, including cutting, obscuring, silvering and bending. Form necessary holes, including for fixings, hardware, equipment, access openings and speaking holes. Process exposed glass edges to a finish not inferior to ground arrised.

Framed glazing

Assembly: Provide proprietary glazing beads and resilient (PVC, butyl or similar) glazing tapes, gaskets and inserts, to hold the glass firmly without distortion and to withstand the documented loadings.

Frameless glazing

Assembly: Join the vertical edges of adjacent glass panels with a clear structural silicone jointing compound.

Support: For frameless installations not fixed directly to the building structure, provide adequate connection of the top and bottom glazing channels or bead to resist lateral loads.

3.10 PLENUM BAFFLES

Baffles

General: Install plenum baffles tightly butted to building structure, service ducts, pipes and conduits and to the top of the partition or to the top of the suspended ceiling directly above the line of the partition. Seal joints, penetrations and intersections and maintain the required performance.

Bulk insulation: Install individual layers to fill space between building structure and the top of the partition or the top of the suspended ceiling.

Flexible sheet insulation: Fix to soffit through a continuous furring channel, hang to meet the top of the partition and extend horizontally 900 mm over the suspended ceiling.

Fire-resisting partitions

General: If a suspended ceiling of equivalent fire-resistance is not provided, either extend the partitions to the underside of the structural soffit, or provide plenum baffles of equivalent fire-resistance level.

Acoustic rated partitions

General: If a suspended ceiling of equivalent sound insulation rating is not provided, either extend the partitions to the underside of the structural soffit, or provide acoustic rated plenum baffles. The ceiling and baffle to provide a combined rating equivalent to the partition rating.

3.11 COMPLETION

Cleaning

General: Remove protective coverings, replace damaged glass and leave the work clean, polished, free from defects, and in good condition.

Rectification

General: Correct any defects to joints, remove any excess joint compound, and leave the partition installation complete, clean and ready for the application of finishes.

Paint

General: Within 14 days of the date for practical completion, provide touch-up paint for each demountable partition colour used, including application instructions.

Operation and maintenance manuals

Requirement: Prepare a manual that includes the following:

- Full product information for each system, including product designations, components list, colours and finishes, and accessories.

- Information on all glass, including type, thickness, and details of any colouration or treatment affecting the physical appearance of the installation.
- Information on all doors and hardware supplied as part of the system, including door type, size, finishes, and hardware details.
- Maintenance recommendations.
- Copies of type tests and compliance certificates for fire, acoustic or other system performance requirements.
- Detailed instructions for demounting and re-erecting each demountable partition system without damage and to maintain acoustic and fire-resisting properties. Include information on the relocation of built-in services.

JOINERY

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General
Requirement: Provide joinery, as documented.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General
Requirement: Conform to the following:
- *0171 General requirements*.
- *0185 Timber products, finishes and treatment*

1.3 SUBMISSIONS

Operation and maintenance manuals
Requirement: Submit manual to **COMPLETION**, **Operation and maintenance manuals**.

Products and materials
Manufacturer's data: Submit manufacturer's product data.
Proprietary items: Submit the manufacturer’s standard drawings and details showing:
- Methods of construction.
- Assembly and fixing, with dimensions and tolerances.

Shop drawings
General: Submit shop drawings to a scale that best describes the detail, showing the following:
- Overall dimensions.
- Materials, thicknesses and finishes of elements including doors, divisions, shelves and benches.
- Type of construction including mitre joints and junctions of members.
- Hardware type and location.
- Temporary bracing, if required.
- Procedures for shop and site assembly and fixing.
- Locations of benchtop joints.
- Stone benchtop layout including joint arrangement and penetrations.
- Locations of sanitary fixtures, stoves, ovens, sinks, and other items to be installed in the units.
- Relationship of fixture to adjacent building elements.
- Details of fabrication involving other trades or components.
- Proposals for the break-up of large items as required for delivery to the site.
- Proposed method of joining the modules of large items.

Timing: Before fabrication.

Subcontractors
General: Submit names and contact details of proposed suppliers and installers.

Warranties
Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Warranties**.

1.4 INSPECTION

Notice
Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:
- Shop fabricated or assembled items ready for delivery to the site.
- Openings prepared to receive assemblies.
- Site erected assemblies on completion of erection, before covering up by cladding and encasing.
- Surfaces prepared for, and immediately before, site applied finishes.

- Completion of installation.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Storage and handling

Requirement: Deliver joinery units to site in unbroken wrapping or containers and store so that its moisture content is not adversely affected. Do not store in areas of wet plaster. Store in an adequately ventilated space away from heat and direct sunlight. Keep storage time to a minimum by delivering items only when required for installation.

2.2 JOINERY MATERIALS AND COMPONENTS

Visible work

Clear finished timber and veneer: Make sure all visible surfaces are free of branding, crayon or chalk marks and of blemishes caused by handling.

Joinery timber

Hardwood for trim: To AS 2796.1 (1999).

Hardwood for furniture: To AS 2796.3 (1999).

Seasoned cypress pine: To AS 1810 (1995).

Softwood for trim: To AS 4785.1 (2002).

Softwood for furniture: To AS 4785.3 (2002).

Finished sizes of milled timbers: Not less than the documented dimensions unless qualified by a term such as nominal, out of or ex to which industry standards for finished sizes apply.

Plywood

Interior use generally: To AS/NZS 2270 (2006).

Interior use, exposed to moisture: To AS/NZS 2271 (2004).

Visible surface with a clear finish: Veneer quality A.

Other visible surfaces: Veneer quality B.

Non-structural glued laminated timber

Wet process fibreboard (including hardboard)

Standard: To AS/NZS 1859.4 (2018).

Particleboard

Standard: To AS 1859.1 (2017).

Melamine overlaid particleboard: Particleboard overlaid on both sides with low pressure melamine.

Dry process fibreboard (including medium density fibreboard)

Standard: To AS/NZS 1859.2 (2017).

Melamine overlaid medium density fibreboard: Medium density fibreboard (STD MDF) overlaid on both sides with low pressure melamine.

Decorative overlaid wood panels

Standard: To AS/NZS 1859.3 (2017).

High pressure decorative laminate (HPDL) sheets

Standard: To AS/NZS 2924.1 (2024).

Minimum thickness: Conform to the following:

- For horizontal surfaces fixed to a continuous substrate: 1.2 mm.
- For vertical surfaces fixed to a continuous substrate: 0.8 mm.
- For post formed laminate fixed to a continuous substrate: 0.8 mm.
- For vertical surfaces fixed intermittently, including to studs: 3.0 mm.
- For edge strips: 0.4 mm.

Stone facings

General: Provide stone slabs within the visual range of the approved samples. Repair mud veins or lines of separation that are integral to the selected pattern with resin fillers and back lining.

Splashbacks

Glass: Toughened safety glass to AS 2208 (2023).

Stainless steel: Type 304, No. 4 finish.

2.3 VENEERS

Timber veneer

Requirement: Provide veneers in specified matching arrangement flitch batched and falling within the visual range of the approved sample.

Veneer quality: To AS/NZS 2270 (2006).

Minimum grade:

- Select grade, veneer quality A, for visible surfaces to have clear finish or to have no coated finish.
- General purpose grade, veneer quality B, for other visible surfaces.

Vinyl veneer

Type: Proprietary unbacked vinyl fabric factory-bonded to the designated surface.

2.4 JOINERY ASSEMBLIES

General

Standard: To AS 4386 (2018).

Product certification

Plinths

Thickness: 16 mm.

Fabrication: Form up with front and back members and full height cross members at not more than 900 mm centres.

Fasteners: Conceal with finish.

Installation: Scribe to floor and secure to wall to provide level platform for carcasses.

Carcasses

Thickness: 16 mm.

Adjustable shelves: Support on proprietary pins in holes bored at equal centres vertically.

- Spacing: 32 mm.

Fasteners: Conceal with finish.

Installation: Secure to walls at not more than 600 mm centres.

Drawer fronts and doors

Thickness: 16 mm.

Door size: Not exceeding 1.5 m^2 on face, with 2400 mm maximum height or 900 mm maximum width.

Drawer fronts: Rout for drawer bottoms.

Drawer backs and sides

Material: PVC film wrapped particleboard.

Thickness: 12 mm.

Installation: Mitre corners leaving outer skin of foil intact, finish with butt joints, glue to form carcass and screw to drawer front. Rout for drawer bottoms.

Drawer bottoms

Material: PVC film laminated hardboard.

Thickness: 3 mm.

Drawer and door hardware

Hinge types: Concealed metal hinges with the following features:

- Nickel-plated.
- Adjustable for height, side and depth location of door.
- Integrated soft and self-closing action.
- Hold open function.

Piano hinges: Chrome-plated steel, extending full height of doors.

Slides: Metal runners and plastic rollers with the following features:

- 30 kg loading capacity.
- Integrated soft and self-closing action.
- Closure retention.

- White thermoset powder coating or nickel-plated.

2.5 WORKING SURFACES

Laminated benchtops

Exposed edges: Conform to one of the following:

- Extend laminate over shaped nosing, finishing more than 50 mm back on underside. Splay outside corners at 45°.

Provide solid timber profiled edge

Installation: Scribe to walls. Fix to carcass at least twice per 600 mm length of benchtop.

Joint sealing: Fill joint with sealant matching finish and clamp with proprietary mechanical connectors.

2.6 OTHER MATERIALS

Tactile ground surface indicators

Tactile ground surface indicators to stairs: To AS/NZS 1428.4.1 (2009).

3 EXECUTION

3.1 TOLERANCES

General

Requirement: Fabricate and install joinery items to substrates undamaged, plumb, level, straight and free of distortion.

Tolerances table

Property	Tolerance
Plumb and level	1:800
Offsets in flush adjoining surfaces	0.5 mm
Offsets in revealed adjoining surfaces	2 mm
Alignment of adjoining doors	0.5 mm
Difference in scribe thickness for joinery items centred between walls	2 mm
Doors centred in openings	0
Joints in finished surfaces	0

3.2 JOINERY

General

Joints: Provide materials in single lengths where possible. If joints are necessary, make them over supports.

Framing: Frame and trim where necessary for openings, including those required by other trades.

Concealed surfaces: Prime surfaces concealed by substrates.

Deficiencies: Examine joinery units for completeness and remedy deficiencies.

Substrate: Damp clean and vacuum substrate surfaces that will be permanently concealed.

Acclimatisation

General: Acclimatise the joinery items by stacking in the in-service conditions with air circulation to all surfaces after the following are complete:

- Air conditioning operational.
- Lighting operational.
- Site drainage and stormwater works are complete.
- Space fully enclosed and secure.
- Wet work complete and dry.

Accessories and trim

General: Provide accessories and trim necessary to complete the installation.

Fasteners

Visibility: Do not provide visible fasteners except in the following locations:

- Inside cupboards and drawer units.
- Inside open units, in which case provide proprietary caps to conceal fixings.

Visible fasteners: Where fasteners are unavoidable on visible joinery faces, sink the heads below the surface and fill the sinking flush with a material compatible with the surface finish. In surfaces that are to have clear or tinted finish, provide matching wood plugs showing face (not end) grain. In surfaces that are to have melamine finish, provide proprietary screws and caps finished to match.

Fixing to substrate: Fix joinery units to substrates as follows:

- Floor mounted units: 600 mm centres maximum.
- Wall mounted units: To each nogging and/or stud stiffener.

Fasteners: Screws with washers into timber or steel framing, or masonry anchors.

Adhesives

General: Provide adhesives to transmit the loads imposed and for the rigidity of the assembly, without causing discolouration of finished surfaces.

Finishing

Junctions with structure: Scribe plinths, plinths, benchtops, splashbacks, ends of cupboards, kickboards and returns to follow the line of structure.

Joints: Scribe internal and mitre external joints.

Edge strips: Finish exposed edges of sheets with edge strips that match sheet faces.

Matching: For surfaces that are to have clear or tinted finish, arrange adjacent pieces to match the grain and colour.

Hygiene requirements: To all food handling areas and voids at the backs of units in all areas, seal all carcass and wall/floor junctions, and cable and pipe entries with silicone beads for vermin proofing. Apply water resistant sealants around all plumbing fixtures and make sure sealants are fit for purpose.

Benchtops

Installation: Fix to carcass at least twice per 600 mm length of benchtop.

Joint sealing: Fill joints with sealant matching the finish colour and clamp with proprietary mechanical connectors.

Edge sealing: Seal to walls and carcasses with a sealant that matches the finish colour.

Glass splashbacks

Adhesive: Fix with non-acidic silicone adhesive. Apply at the rate recommended by the manufacturer.

Installation: Clean the back of the glass panel and apply walnuts of adhesive together with double-sided adhesive tape for temporary support, and affix directly to the substrate.

Labelling

General: Permanently mark each unit of furniture with the manufacturer's name, on an interior surface.

3.3 TIMBER STAIRS

Set-out

General: Before setting out the stair materials, verify exact dimensions between finished floor levels. Set out stair rod to give uniform risers and uniform treads respectively in each flight.

Fabrication

Closed strings: Trench for treads and risers.

Cut strings: Profile for treads and risers. Mitre riser ends.

Treads: Arris nosings to a pencil round. Return nosings at cut strings. Groove for riser tongue in closed rise stair. Set rise 19 mm back from nosing.

Nosing strip: To BCA (2022) D3D14 and BCA (2022) D3D15.

Top tread: Flush with finished floor, otherwise to match stair treads. Provide similar tread section as nosing to floor edges around stairwell.

Risers: Tongue to tread. Mitre to string in cut string stairs.

Installation

General: Glue joints in internal work. In closed rise stairs, wedge treads and risers to strings. Plant 2 glue blocks behind each tread to riser junction. Trim floors to carry ends of stairs and around stair well.

Stair bolts to open rise close string stairs: Provide 8 mm diameter mild steel stair bolts, one at each end and one at centre of flight, transversely between strings. Draw strings tight against ends of treads.

Fascia: Provide fascia of depth sufficient to overlap 19 mm below ceiling, fixed to floor joists hard up under nosing.

Trim: Provide beads and mouldings as necessary, including a scotia or similar planted under the tread nosing against the risers and cut strings, a bead between wall strings and wall, and a bead behind the fascia over the ceiling finish.

Soffit lining: Fix to 38 x 38 mm nailing battens notched and nailed to the underside of treads and risers of closed riser stairs at the centre of flights and at each side.

3.4 TIMBER BALUSTRADES

General

Requirement: Provide balustrading to stair and landing, consisting of newels, handrail, balusters, and associated mouldings.

Newels

General: Halve and bolt to strings. Turn tops to detail.

Handrails

Installation: Install handrails on edge, stubbing tenon to newels.

Bullnose arrises: 13 mm radius.

Balusters

Installation: Stub tenon to handrail at top and to tread or floor at bottom.

Spacing: Evenly spaced at maximum 100 mm centres.

3.5 TRIM

General

Requirement: Provide trim, such as architraves, beads, mouldings, stops and skirtings to make neat junctions to openings and between lining components, finishes and adjacent surfaces.

Fixing

Masonry walls: Screw with wall plugs at 600 mm centres maximum.

Stud walls: Nail to plate or framing at 600 mm centres maximum.

3.6 COMPLETION

Protection

Timber treads: Provide full timber or plywood casing.

Cleaning

Requirement: Remove all dust, marks and rubbish from all surfaces and internal spaces. Clean and polish all self-finished surfaces such as anodised and powder coated metals, sanitary ware, glass, tiles and laminates.

Temporary coatings: On or before completion of the works, or before joining up to other surfaces, remove all traces of temporary protective coatings.

Operation and maintenance manuals

Requirement: Prepare a manual that includes the manufacturer’s published recommendations for service use.

0552B METALWORK - FABRICATED

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide metal fixtures, as documented.

Performance

Requirements:

- Undamaged, plumb, level and straight or as documented.
- Free of surface defects or distortions or as documented.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 STANDARDS

General

Structural design actions: To AS/NZS 1170.1 (2002).

Stairs and balustrades: To the NCC cited AS 1428.1 (2009).

1.4 TOLERANCES

General

Requirement: ±2 mm from design dimensions.

1.5 SUBMISSIONS

Design documentation

Operation and maintenance manuals

Requirement: Submit manual to **COMPLETION**, **Operation and maintenance manuals**.

Products and materials

Proprietary items: Submit the manufacturer's standard drawings and details showing:

- Methods of construction.
- Assembly and fixing, with dimensions and tolerances.

Stainless steel: For each batch of stainless steel supplied to the works, submit a certificate of conformance or test certificate, as documented.

Stainless steel welding: Before fabrication commences, submit evidence of qualification of the welding procedure by testing to AS/NZS 1554.6 (2012) clause 4.7 or evidence of prequalification to AS/NZS 1554.6 (2012) clause 4.12.

Shop drawings

General: Submit shop drawings to a scale that best describes the detail, showing the following information:

- Overall and detail dimensions.
- Details of fabrication and components.
- Details of fabrication involving other trades or components.
- Information necessary for site assembly.
- Proposals for the break-up of large items as required for delivery to the site.
- Proposed method of joining the modules of large items.

Subcontractors

General: Submit names and contact details of proposed suppliers, fabricators and installers.

Warranties

Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Warranties**.

1.6 INSPECTION

Notice

Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:

- Arrival of materials on site or in workshop.
- Shop fabricated or assembled items ready for delivery to the site.
- Commencement of shop or site welding.
- Site erected assemblies on completion of erection, before covering up by cladding and encasing.
- Steel surfaces prepared for, and immediately before, site applied finishes.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Storage and handling

Requirement: Store and handle fabricated metalwork, as follows:

- Deliver to site in unbroken wrapping or packing.
- Store on a level base, away from uncured concrete and masonry and areas of wet plaster.
- Do not store in contact with other materials that may cause staining, denting or other surface damage.
- Use gloves when handling precoated finishes.
- Keep storage time to minimum by delivering items only when required for installation.

Marking

General: Provide suitable and sufficient marks or other means for identifying each member of site-erected assemblies, and for their correct setting out, location, erection and connection. Mark bolted connections to show the bolting category. Do not mark stainless steel by notching.

2.2 MATERIALS

Metals and components

Performance: Provide metals and components in quantity, lengths and cross-sections of strength and stiffness suited to their required function and as documented.

Stainless steel

Plate, sheet and strip: To ASTM A240/A240M (2023).

Bar: To ASTM A276/A276M (2024).

Tube: To ASTM A554 (2021).

Aluminium

Plate sheet and strip: To AS/NZS 1734 (1997).

Bar, rod and wire: To AS/NZS 1865 (1997).

Tube: To AS/NZS 1867 (1997).

Aluminium alloys, compositions and designations: To AS 2848.1 (1998).

Steel

Steel plate: To AS/NZS 3678 (2016).

Hot rolled bars and sections: AS/NZS 3679.1 (2016).

Welded sections: To AS/NZS 3679.2 (2016).

Fasteners

Performance: Provide fasteners to resist galvanic corrosion in materials of structural and mechanical strengths and corrosion resistance at least equal to that of the lowest resistant metal in the connection.

Materials: Provide fasteners as follows:

- To copper and copper alloys: Copper or copper-alloy fixing devices only.
- To aluminium and aluminium alloys: Aluminium alloy or non-magnetic stainless steel fixing devices only.
- To stainless steel: Appropriate stainless steel fixing devices only.

2.3 OTHER MATERIALS

Tactile ground surface indicators

Tactile ground surface indicators to stairs: To AS/NZS 1428.4.1 (2009).

3 EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION GENERALLY

Aluminium structures
Standard: To AS/NZS 1664.1 (1997) or AS/NZS 1664.2 (1997).

Metals
Incompatible metals: Separate using concealed layers of suitable materials in appropriate thicknesses.

Fabrication
Workshop: Fabricate and pre-assemble items in the workshop wherever practicable.

Edges and surfaces: Keep clean, neat and free from burrs and indentations. Remove sharp edges without excessive radiusing.

Tube bends: Form bends in tube without deforming the cross-section and the material thickness.

Colour finished work: Match colours of sheets, extrusions and heads of fasteners.

Thermal movement: Accommodate thermal movement in joints and fastenings.

Joints
General: Fit joints to an accuracy appropriate to the class of work. Finish visible joints made by cutting, drilling, welding, brazing or soldering using grinding, buffing or other methods appropriate to the class of work, before further treatment.

Self-finished metals: Free of surface colour variations, after jointing.

Joints: Fit accurately to a fine hairline or as documented.

Splicing
General: Provide structural members in single lengths.

3.2 WELDING AND BRAZING

Welding
Quality: Provide finished welds that are free of surface and internal cracks, welding slag, and porosity.

Corners and edges: Grind smooth sharp, marred, or roughened corners and edges.

Rough surfaces: Deburr and grind smooth.

Site welds: Avoid site welding wherever possible. If required, locate site welds in positions for down hand welding.

Butt weld quality level: Not inferior to the appropriate level recommended in AS/NZS 1554.1 (2014) Section 6, AS/NZS 1554.6 (2012) Section 6 or AS/NZS 1665 (2004) Section 6, as appropriate.

Brazing
General: Make sure brazed joints have sufficient lap to provide a mechanically sound joint.

Butt joints: Do not use butt joints for joints subject to load. If butt joints are used, do not rely on the filler material only.

3.3 STAINLESS STEEL FABRICATION

Welding stainless steel
Qualification of welders: To AS 1796 (2022).

Riveting
General: Use only to join stainless steel sheet or strip less than 1 mm thick. Drill (not punch) the rivet hole, and drive the rivet cold. On completion, clean and passivate the riveted assembly.

Soldering
General: Do not solder stainless steel.

3.4 CUSTOM-BUILT STEEL STAIRS

General
Design and construction: To BCA (2022) D3.

Fabrication
Method: Welding.

Joints: Produce smooth unbroken surfaces at joints or as documented. Scribe the joints to all steel members. Make end-to-end joints over an internal sleeve.

Bends: Make changes of direction in rails by evenly curved pipe bends.

Free ends: Seal the free ends of pipes with fabricated or purpose-made end caps.

Fixing to structure
General: Provide fabricated predrilled or purpose-made brackets and bases, and attach the steel member to the building structure with fixings compatible with the substrate.

Proprietary items: Install to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Galvanizing
General: If possible, complete fabrication before galvanizing; otherwise apply a zinc-rich primer to affected joint surfaces.

Other protective coatings
General: Apply other protective coatings as documented and to the manufacturer's recommendations.

3.5 PROPRIETARY STAIR SYSTEMS

General
Design and construction: To BCA (2022) D3.

Straight flight stair assembly: A proprietary system, pre-assembled and fixed in place, comprising the following:

- Stair flights with treads and risers.
- Landings.
- Balustrade and handrail to stair flight and landings.
- Security gates where documented.

Circular stairs: A proprietary system, mechanically assembled and fixed in place, comprising the following:

- A central steel tube column.
- Prefabricated metal treads sleeved over and cantilevered from the column.
- Landings.
- Balustrade and handrail to stair and landings.
- Spacers, fixings and accessories necessary to complete the system.

3.6 RETRACTABLE CEILING ACCESS STAIRS

General
Retractable access stair: A proprietary system, pre-assembled and fixed in place, comprising the following:

- Retractable ladder.
- Infill frame and ceiling panel.
- Handrails, if required.

3.7 BALUSTRADES

Fabrication
Method: Welding.

Joints: Produce smooth unbroken surfaces at joints. Scribe the joints between posts and rails. Make end-to-end joints over an internal sleeve.

Bends: Make changes of direction in rails by evenly curved pipe bends.

Free ends: Seal the free ends of pipes with fabricated or purpose-made end caps.

Fixing to structure
General: Provide fabricated predrilled or purpose-made brackets or post bases, and attach the piping to the building structure with fixings, including bolts into masonry anchors, and coach screws or bolts into timber, of metal compatible with the piping.

Galvanizing
General: If possible, complete fabrication before galvanizing; otherwise apply a zinc-rich primer to affected joint surfaces.

Other protective coatings
General: Apply other protective coatings as documented and to the manufacturer's recommendations.

3.8 PROPRIETARY BALUSTRADES

General
Balustrades: A proprietary system, pre-assembled and fixed in place, comprising the following:

- Posts, rails and balusters.

- Infill frame and panels.
- Handrails, if required.

3.9 CORNER GUARDS

Guards

General: Where projecting corners of the structure require protection from mechanical damage, provide metal corner guards as follows:

- Consisting of rolled angle sections or sections fabricated from metal sheet bent to the radius or angle of the corner.
- Fitting close to adjoining surface finishes.
- Solidly grouted up at the back as necessary to eliminate voids.
- Securely fixed by a method that does not cause distortion in the guard surface, and consists of either concealed built in lugs, or flush countersunk head fixings into appropriate anchors.

3.10 COMPLETION

Cleaning

Temporary coatings: On or before completion of the works, or before joining up to other surfaces, remove all traces of coatings used as temporary protection.

Operation and maintenance manuals

Requirement: Prepare a manual that includes the manufacturer’s published recommendations for service use.

0581B SIGNAGE

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide signage systems, as documented.

Performance

Requirement: Provide signage as follows:

- Appropriately secured.
- Located within a clear line of vision.
- With characters and symbols contrasting with the background.
- With clean, well-defined edges or arrises, and free from blemishes.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.
- *0921 Low voltage power systems*.

1.3 STANDARDS

Signs

Safety signs - design and use: To AS 1319 (1994).

Signs and graphics for disability access: To the NCC cited AS 1428.1 (2009) and AS 1428.2 (1992).

Tactile wayfinding signs: To AS 1428.4.2 (2018).

1.4 SUBMISSIONS

Warranties

Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Warranties**.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Standards

Aluminium:

- Plate for engraving: Alloy and temper designation 6063-0 to AS 2848.1 (1998).
- For casting: To AS 1874 (2000).
- Finishes:
  - . Anodising: To AS 1231 (2000).
  - . Powder coating: To AS 3715 (2002) and AAMA 2604 (2022).

Stainless steel:

- External: Type 316. Mirror electropolish surface finish.
- Internal: Type 304. No. 4 brushed (general purpose polished) surface finish.

Plastics:

- PVC-U sheet: Semi-rigid sheet.
- Rigid cellular polystyrene: To AS 1366.3 (1992), class VH for cut-out shapes.

Brass and bronze: Plate, sheet and strip: To AS 1566 (1997).

- Finish: Patinated.

Glass type and thickness: To AS 1288 (2021).

Photoluminescent exit signs: To BCA (2022) E4D8(a)(ii).

Adhesive
General: Proprietary solvent based contact adhesive compatible with the substrate and signage material.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 WORKMANSHIP

Production
General: Form signage and graphic items accurately with clean, well-defined edges or arises, free from blemishes.
Engraving to two-layer plastic laminate: Engrave lettering to expose the lower laminate.
Engraved and filled: Lettering precision cut and filled colouring material. Clean faces of all filling material.
Casting: Produce shapes free of pits, scale, blow holes or other defects, hand or machine-finished if necessary.
Laser cut lettering: Individual vinyl letters with self-adhesive backing.
Printed lettering: Lettering and graphic images screen/digitally printed on:
- Film with self-adhesive backing.
- Acrylic sheet.
- Aluminium plate.
- Stainless steel plate.

Large format digital printing: Lettering and graphic images screen printed film with self-adhesive backing.
Signwriting: Lettering and graphic images hand painted direct to the background by a tradesman with recognised qualifications and demonstrated skills.
Fabricated: Three dimensional, formed as follows:
- Laser cutting from solid material and hand finished as necessary.
- Moulding: Individual plastic hollow three dimensional characters and shapes formed by:
  . Injection moulding.
  . Vacuum forming.
- Built-up individual shapes by fabricating the faces and edges from separate pieces neatly and securely joined.

3.2 INSTALLATION

General
Requirement: Install signage and graphic items level and plumb, securely mounted, with concealed corrosion and theft-resistant fixings.

Self-adhesive signs
Requirement: Fix free of bubbles and creases.

Aluminium and stainless steel signs
Pin fixing: Epoxy fix to substrate.

Illuminated signs
Electrical fittings: Provide a junction box for power connection, and the necessary lamps with proper mountings, protection, and accessories including wiring transformers and insulators. Install signs and conceal cabling to *0921 Low voltage power systems*.

3.3 COMPLETION

Cleaning
General: Remove protective coverings, replace damaged signage and leave the work clean, polished, free from defects, and in good condition.

Warranties
Type: [complete/delete]
Period: [complete/delete]

4 SELECTIONS

4.1 GENERAL SIGNS

Signage schedule

Sign No.	Sign type	Location	Message	Notes

Fixed signs schedule

	FS1	FS2	FS3
Location			
Message			
Material			
Finish/Colour			
Size (l x h x t) (mm)			
Mounting			
Fixing method			

Changeable letter systems schedule

	CL1	CL2	CL3
Location			
Message			
Display board: Material			
Display board: Finish/Colour			
Display board: Size (l x h x t) (mm)			
Display board: Fixing method			
Display board: Frame			
Display board: Enclosure			
Display board: Locking system			
Characters: Material			
Characters: Finish/Colour			
Characters: Letter height and thickness (mm)			
Characters: Typeface			
Characters: Quantity			
Characters: Fixing method			

Changeable plate systems schedule

	CP1	CP2	CP3
Location			
Message			
Sign plate holder: Material			
Sign plate holder: Finish/colour			
Sign plate holder: Size (l x h x t) (mm)			
Sign plate holder: Fixing method			
Sign plate: Material			
Sign plate: Finish/Colour			

	CP1	CP2	CP3
Sign plate: Size (l x h x t) (mm)			
Sign plate: Fixing method			

External post and panel systems schedule

	EP1	EP2	EP3
Location			
Message			
Panels: Material			
Panels: Finish/Colour			
Panels: Size (l x h x t) (mm)			
Panels: Fixing method			
Supporting framework: Material			

Illuminated signs schedule

	IS1	IS2	IS3
Location			
Message			
Cabinet: Material			
Cabinet: Finish/Colour			
Cabinet: Size (l x h x t) (mm)			
Cabinet: Mounting			
Cabinet: Fixing method			
Face panel: Material			
Face panel: Form			
Illumination: Type			
Illumination: Lamps			

Tactile wayfinding signs schedule

	TW1	TW2	TW3
Location			
Message			
Material			
Finish/Colour			
Size (l x h x t) (mm)			
Method of forming			
Finish			
Mounting			
Fixing method			

4.2 STATUTORY SIGNS

Termite protection

Location	In or near meter box or similar
Message	Details of termite management system Indicate: The method of protection The date of installation The life expectancy of a chemical barrier as listed on the

	appropriate authority's pesticides register label The installer's recommendation for inspections
Sign type	Laminated page(s)
Conformance	BCA (2022) B1D4(i)(ii) AS 3660.1 (2014) Appendix A

Required fire door and required smoke door

Location	On or adjacent to the door, on the side of the door that faces a person seeking egress, and if the door is in the held open position, on either the wall adjacent the doorway or both sides of the door.
Message if auto door with auto hold open device	FIRE SAFETY DOOR – DO NOT OBSTRUCT
Message if self-closing door	DO NOT OBSTRUCT DO NOT KEEP OPEN FIRE SAFETY DOOR
Message if door discharging from a fire isolated exit	FIRE SAFETY DOOR – DO NOT OBSTRUCT
Letter height (minimum)	20 mm
Sign type	
Conformance	BCA (2022) D3D28

Non-required stair, ramp or escalator

Location	Outside the shaft near all doors opening to the shaft
Message	DO NOT USE THIS STAIRWAY IF THERE IS A FIRE (or) Do not use this stairway if there is a fire
Letter height (minimum)	20 mm (upper case) 16 mm (lower case)
Sign type	
Conformance	BCA (2022) Spec 14

Exit signs, Class 2 or 3 buildings and Class 4 parts, in lieu of illuminated exit signs

Location	On, above, or adjacent every door described in BCA (2022) E4D5, BCA (2022) E4D6 and BCA (2022) E4D7.
Message	EXIT (with arrow in the direction of egress, if required)
Letter height (minimum)	25 mm
Sign type	
Conformance	BCA (2022) E4D5, BCA (2022) E4D6 and BCA (2022) E4D7

Braille and tactile exit signage

Location	To BCA (2022) Spec 15 for every door described in BCA (2022) E4D5
Message	Exit (and) Level (followed by the floor level number) (Braille and tactile signage)
Letter height (minimum)	BCA (2022) Spec 15
Mounting height	Braille and tactile signage between 1200 mm and 1600 mm above finished floor level
Sign type	

Conformance	BCA (2022) E4D5, BCA (2022) D4D7 and BCA (2022) Spec 15

Fire exit offence notice (NSW)

Location	In a conspicuous position adjacent to doors to fire-isolated stairs
Message	OFFENCE RELATING TO FIRE EXITS It is an offence under the *Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979 (NSW)* (a) to place anything in or near this fire exit that may obstruct persons moving to and from the exit, or (b) to interfere with or obstruct the operation of any fire doors, or (c) to remove, damage or otherwise interfere with this notice.
Letter height (minimum)	8 mm (title), 2.5 mm (remainder)
Sign type	
Conformance	*Environmental Planning and Assessment (Development C ertification and Fire Safety) Regulation 2021 (NSW)* cl 108

Fire exit offence notice (ACT)

Location	In a conspicuous position adjacent to doors to fire-isolated stairs
Message	OFFENCES RELATING TO FIRE STAIRS Under the *Emergencies Act 2004 (ACT)* it is an offence to: 1. Place anything in this stairway or any associated passageway leading to the exterior of the building which may impede the free passage of persons; or 2. Interfere with or cause obstruction or impediment to the normal operation of fire doors providing access to this stairway; or 3. Remove, damage or otherwise interfere with this notice.
Letter height (minimum)	20 mm (title), 3 mm (remainder)
Sign type	Embossed or engraved and filled
Conformance	BCA (2022) Schedule 4 ACT

Fire hose reels and fire hydrants

Location	Cupboard door or adjacent the FHR
Message	FIRE HYDRANT (and/or) FIRE HOSE REEL
Letter height (minimum)	50 mm
Sign type	Adhesive backed vinyl
Conformance	AS 2441 (2005) clause 10.4.4 AS 2419.1 (2021) clause 11.3.5

Fire hose reel – Location sign

Location	Above or adjacent the FHR if located in a recess, cavity or obscure location
Message	To AS 2441 (2005) Figure 10.1
Letter height (minimum)	16 mm
Mounting height (minimum)	2000 mm above finished floor level or at a height visible to a person approaching the fire hose reel location

Sign type	Adhesive backed vinyl
Conformance	AS 2441 (2005) clause 4.1

Fire brigade booster assembly cabinet – Location sign

Location	Cabinet doors
Message if fire hydrant booster is installed	FIRE HYDRANT BOOSTER ASSEMBLY
Message if fire hydrant booster and sprinkler booster are installed	FIRE HYDRANT BOOSTER AND SPRINKLER BOOSTER ASSEMBLY
Message if combined fire hydrant and sprinkler booster is installed	COMBINED FIRE HYDRANT AND SPRINKLER BOOSTER ASSEMBLY
Message if a feed fire hydrant is enclosed in the cabinet	(Symbol FH within a 100 mm circle of thickness and colour to match lettering)
Letter height (minimum)	50 mm
Sign type	Adhesive backed vinyl
Conformance	AS 2419.1 (2021) clause 11.3.1 AS 2118.6 (2012) clause 2.2.3

Fire brigade booster assembly – Attack fire hydrant

Location	Behind or adjacent to attack fire hydrant
Message	ATTACK HYDRANT
Letter height (minimum)	25 mm
Sign type	
Conformance	AS 2419.1 (2021) clause 11.3.1

Fire brigade booster assembly – Notice of pressure

Location	Within the cabinet or enclosure
Message	TEST PRESSURE: ‹› kPa BOOST PRESSURE: ‹› kPa
Letter height (minimum)	25 mm
Sign type	
Conformance	AS 2419.1 (2021) clause 11.3.4

Boosters in series with pumps

Location	Adjacent to the pressure gauge
Message	WARNING THIS BOOSTER IS CONNECTED IN SERIES (RELAY) WITH THE FIXED ON-SITE FIRE PUMPS WHICH MAY BE RUNNING. THIS GAUGE SHOWS THE DISCHARGE PRESSURE AT THE OUTLET OF THE FIXED ON-SITE PUMP
Letter height (minimum)	25 mm (title), 15 mm (remainder)
Sign type	
Conformance	AS 2419.1 (2021) clause 11.3.7.1

Block plan

Location	At booster assembly cabinet or enclosure, and in fire control room or pump room, if applicable.
Message	(Block plan to AS 2419.1 (2021) clause 11.5 or AS 2118.1 (2017) clause 8.3)

Letter height (minimum)	
Sign type	
Conformance	AS 2419.1 (2021) clause 11.5 AS 2118.1 (2017) clause 8.3

Portable fire extinguishers – Cabinet

Location	Cabinet
Message	FIRE EXTINGUISHER
Letter height (minimum)	32 mm
Sign type	Adhesive backed vinyl
Conformance	AS 2444 (2001) clause 3.6

Portable fire extinguishers – Location sign

Location	As nominated in AS 2444 (2001) clause 3.2 at every installed extinguisher nominated in BCA (2022) E1D14
Message	FIRE EXTINGUISHER (and prescribed graphic)
Letter height (minimum)	16 mm
Mounting height (minimum)	2000 mm above finished floor level
Sign type	Computer generated adhesive backed vinyl graphic
Conformance	AS 2444 (2001) clause 3.3

Fire blankets

Location	As nominated in AS 2444 (2001) clause 6.4 at every blanket location nominated in AS 2444 (2001) clause 6.3
Message	FIRE BLANKET (and prescribed graphic)
Letter height (minimum)	16 mm
Mounting height (minimum)	2000 mm above finished floor level
Sign type	Computer generated adhesive backed vinyl graphic
Conformance	AS 2444 (2001) clauses 6.3, 6.4 and Figure 6.1

Regulatory car park signs – Low clearance

Location	Entry to overhead obstruction where clearance is: 3 m or less – car and light van use only 4.6 m – all other cases
Message	LOW CLEARANCE (measured minimum clearance rounded down to the nearest 0.1 m)
Sign type	AS/NZS 2890.1 (2004) R6-11 or R6-16
Conformance	AS/NZS 2890.1 (2004) clause 4.3.4

Regulatory car park signs – Stop and Give Way

Location	As required for traffic control
Message	Graphic nominated in AS/NZS 2890.1 (2004) clause 4.3.4(b)
Sign type	AS/NZS 2890.1 (2004) R1-1 (Stop), R1-2 (Give Way)
Conformance	AS/NZS 2890.1 (2004) clause 4.3.4

Regulatory car park signs – Speed limit

Location	As required for traffic control
Message	Graphic nominated in AS/NZS 2890.1 (2004) clause

	4.3.4(c)
Sign type	AS/NZS 2890.1 (2004) R4-1
Conformance	AS/NZS 2890.1 (2004) clause 4.3.4

Regulatory car park signs – Hump warning

Location	As required for traffic control
Message	Graphic nominated in AS/NZS 2890.1 (2004) clause 4.3.4(d)
Sign type	AS/NZS 2890.1 (2004) W5-10
Conformance	AS/NZS 2890.1 (2004) clause 4.3.4

Regulatory car park signs – Steep grade warning

Location	As required for traffic control
Message	Graphic nominated in AS/NZS 2890.1 (2004) clause 4.3.4(e)
Sign type	AS/NZS 2890.1 (2004) W5-12 (Down), W5-13 (Up)
Conformance	AS/NZS 2890.1 (2004) clause 4.3.4

Regulatory car park signs – Accessible parking facilities

Location	Designated car space
Symbol	Graphic size and position nominated in the NCC cited AS/NZS 2890.6 (2009) clause 3.1, Figure 3.1. Space delineation and shared space markings to the NCC cited AS/NZS 2890.6 (2009) clause 3.2.
Sign type	Pavement marking paint.
Conformance	NCC cited AS/NZS 2890.6 (2009) clause 3.1

Unisex accessible sanitary facilities

Location	To BCA (2022) Spec 15
Message	Braille and tactile signage incorporating the international symbol of access. Indicate suitability for left or right handed use.
Symbol size	AS 1428.2 (1992) clause 16, Table 1.
Letter height (minimum)	Braille: BCA (2022) Spec 15 Raised characters: Sans serif type font 20 mm.
Sign type	
Conformance	NCC cited AS 1428.1 (2009) clause 8.1 BCA (2022) D4D7

Ambulant sanitary facilities

Location	To BCA (2022) Spec 15
Message	Braille and tactile signage incorporating the male/ female ambulant symbol.
Symbol size	AS 1428.2 (1992) clause 16, Table 1.
Letter height (minimum)	Braille: BCA (2022) Spec 15 Raised characters: Sans serif type font 20 mm.
Sign type	
Conformance	NCC cited AS 1428.1 (2009) clause 8.1 BCA (2022) D4D7

Airlocks to sanitary facilities

Location	Entry doors to airlocks serving areas containing sanitary facilities
Message	Braille and tactile signage incorporating the symbols identifying each sanitary facility within
Symbol size	AS 1428.2 (1992) clause 16, Table 1
Letter height (minimum)	Braille: BCA (2022) Spec 15 Raised characters: Sans serif type font 20 mm
Sign type	
Conformance	NCC cited AS 1428.1 (2009) clause 8.1

Non-accessible sanitary facilities

Location	At each bank of sanitary facilities that are not provided with an accessible unisex sanitary facility
Message	Braille and tactile signage incorporating the international symbol of access. Indicate location of the nearest accessible unisex sanitary facility with directional arrow.
Letter height	AS 1428.2 (1992) clause 17, Table 2
Symbol size	AS 1428.2 (1992) clause 16, Table 1
Sign type	
Conformance	NCC cited AS 1428.1 (2009) clause 8.1 BCA (2022) D4D7

Non-accessible pedestrian entrance

Location	At each non-accessible pedestrian building entrance
Message	Signage incorporating the international symbol of access to direct a person to the location of the nearest accessible pedestrian entrance
Letter height	AS 1428.2 (1992) clause 17, Table 2
Symbol size	AS 1428.2 (1992) clause 16, Table 1
Sign type	
Conformance	NCC cited AS 1428.1 (2009) clause 8.1 BCA (2022) D4D7

Hearing augmentation

Location	Where hearing augmentation is installed to BCA (2022) D4D8
Message	Braille and tactile signage incorporating the international symbol of deafness in white on a blue background. Identify: Type of hearing augmentation. Area covered within the room. If receivers are being used and where the receivers can be obtained.
Letter height (minimum)	BCA (2022) Spec 15
Symbol size	AS 1428.2 (1992) clause 16, Table 1
Sign type	
Conformance	NCC cited AS 1428.1 (2009) clause 8.2.2 BCA (2022) D4D8 BCA (2022) Spec 15

Main switchboard – Main entry, excluding Class 1 dwellings

Location	Each entry that may be used by emergency services or at Fire detection control and indicating equipment (FDCIE)
Message	Indicate location of main switchboard. Incorporate the term Main Switchboard into notice
Letter height (minimum)	
Sign type	
Conformance	AS/NZS 3000 (2018) clause 2.10.2.4

Main switchboard – Room or enclosure, excluding Class 1 dwellings

Location	The room or enclosure containing the main switchboard
Message	MAIN SWITCHBOARD
Letter height (minimum)	
Sign type	
Conformance	AS/NZS 3000 (2018) clause 2.10.2.4

Fire orders – Alpine areas

Location	Near main entrance and on each storey.
Message	FIRE ORDERS followed by an explanation of the following: Method of operation of the alarm system and location of call points Location and method of operation of all the firefighting equipment Location of all exits Evacuation procedure
Letter height (minimum)	
Sign type	
Conformance	BCA (2022) G4D8

0611 RENDERING AND PLASTERING

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General

Requirement: Provide render and plaster finishes, as documented.

Performance

Requirements:

- Resistant to impacts expected in use.
- Free of irregularities.
- Consistent in texture and finish.
- Firmly bonded to substrates for the expected life of the application.
- Without obvious shrinkage cracks.
- As a suitable substrate for the nominated final finish.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General

Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 INTERPRETATION

Abbreviations

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the following abbreviations apply:

- CRF: Cement render – finish.
- CRM: Cement render – medium.
- CRS: Cement render – stronger.
- CRW: Cement render – weaker.
- GPF: Gypsum plaster – finish.

Definitions

General: For the purposes of this worksection, the definitions given in AS 1672.1 (1997) and the following apply:

- Base coat: A plaster coat applied before the application of the finish coat.
- Binder: Material binding aggregate particles together into a heterogeneous mass.
- Bonding treatment: A treatment of a substrate that improves adhesion of a rendering or plastering system.
- Finish coat: The final coat of a coating system.
- Finishing treatment: The treatment applied to a finish coat which may include processes and results.
- Laitance: Scum or whitish deposit that rises to the surface of newly placed, over-wet concrete or over-trowelled mortar.
- Lath: An applied substrate for render or plaster.
- Plaster: A mixture of binders, aggregate and water, which is typically applied to internal substrates, in a plastic state and dries and cures to a hard surface, which may subsequently be decorated or remain self-finished:
  - . Cement plaster: Contains general purpose cement as the principal binder.
  - . Gypsum plaster: Contains hydrated or anhydrous calcium sulfate as the principal binder.
- Plastering: The process of applying plaster to a substrate with a float or trowel.
- Render: A mixture of binders, aggregate, water and with or without admixtures, which is typically applied to external substrates, in a plastic state and dries and cures to a hard surface, which may subsequently be decorated or remain self-finished.
  - . Cement render: Contains general purpose cement as the principal binder.
- Rendering: The process of applying render to a substrate with a float or trowel.

- Rendering or plastering system: One or more coats of render or plaster and associated treatments comprising some or all of the following in sequence:
  . Bonding treatment.
  . Base coat(s).
  . Finish coat.
  . Finishing treatment.
- Substrate: The surface to which a material or product is applied.

1.4 TOLERANCES

Tolerances table

Description	Alignment	Tolerance
Walls and other vertical structures	Vertical	6 mm in 2400 mm
Reveals sides	Vertical	3 mm in 1800 mm
Reveals head up to 1800 mm	Horizontal	3 mm in 1800 mm
Reveals head over 1800 mm	Horizontal	5 mm max
Reveals, piers, beams, wall stop ends up to 300 mm	Square	3 mm max
Reveals, piers, beams, wall stop ends over 300 mm	Square	5 mm max
Radius of corners	Round	Should not vary by more than ±10% over the length of the arris.

1.5 SUBMISSIONS

1.6 INSPECTION

Notice

Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:

- Prototypes ready for inspection.
- Substrates immediately before applying base coats.
- Finishing treatments before decoration.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Storage and handling

General: Store materials in a dry, well-ventilated and secure storage area, unaffected by weather.

2.2 MATERIALS AND COMPONENTS

Accessories

Beads: Proprietary PVC or metal sections manufactured for fixing to substrates and/or embedding in the render or plaster to form and protect edges and junctions.

Lath: Provide a proprietary product manufactured from PVC or raised expanded metal for use with render or plaster.

Metallic-coatings to AS 1397 (2021): For metal beads or lath in cement render or plaster, to the **Corrosion resistance and durability table**.

Admixtures

Plasticisers or workability agents: Do not use.

Aggregates

Sand: Fine, sharp, well-graded sand with a clay content between 1% and 5% tested to AS 1141.12 (2015), and free from efflorescing salts.

Sand grading for base coat plaster table

Sieve size (mm)	Percent passing	
	Minimum	Maximum

Sieve size (mm)	Percent passing	
	Minimum	Maximum
4.75	100	100
2.36	90	100
1.18	60	90
0.6	35	70
0.3	10	30
0.15	0	5
0.075	0	3

Render and plaster for autoclaved aerated concrete
General: Provide a proprietary product manufactured for use with the wall system.

Bonding agents
General: Proprietary products manufactured for bonding cement-based render or plaster to solid substrates.

Cement
Standard: To AS 3972 (2010).

Type: GP.

Colouring products
General: Provide proprietary products manufactured for colouring cement plaster.

Integral pigment proportion: 5% maximum weight of cement.

Cornice cement
General: Provide a proprietary product manufactured for use with the cornice.

Cornices
Cast plaster: Proprietary item.

Corrosion resistance and durability
Requirement: To the **Corrosion resistance and durability table** or provide proprietary products with metallic and/or organic coatings of equivalent corrosion resistance and as follows:

- Galvanizing: To AS/NZS 4680 (2006).

Corrosion resistance and durability table

Atmospheric corrosivity category to AS 4312 (2019)	Metal lath, beads and embedded items	Minimum cement content (mix type) above damp-proof course
C1 and C2	Galvanize after fabrication 300 g/m^2 Stainless steel Type 316	CRW
	Powder coated aluminium	CRM
C3	Stainless steel Type 316 Powder coated aluminium	CRM
C4	Stainless steel Type 316 Powder coated aluminium	CRS
Note: For categories C5 and CX seek specialist advice.		

Curing products
General: Provide proprietary products manufactured for use with the render or plaster system.

Gypsum plaster
General: Provide a proprietary product containing calcium sulfate hemihydrate with additives to modify setting.

Lime
Limes for building: To AS 1672.1 (1997).

Lime putty
General: Prepare lime putty as follows:

- Stand dry hydrated lime to AS 1672.1 (1997) and water for 24 hours or more without drying out.
- Stand quicklime and water for 14 days or more without drying out.

Mixes

General: Select a mix proportion to suit the conditions of application.

Measurement: Measure binders and sand by volume using buckets or boxes. Do not allow sand to bulk by absorption of water.

Mixing: Machine mix for 3 to 6 minutes.

Strength of successive coats: Make sure successive coats are no richer in binder than the coat to which they are applied.

Mix proportion table – Cement render, by volume

Mix type		Substrate	Upper and lower limits of proportions by volume		
			Cement	Lime	Sand
Single or multi-coat systems with integral finishing treatments Base coats in multi-coat systems with cement or gypsum finishes	CRS	Dense and smooth concrete and masonry	1 1	0 0.5	3 4.5
	CRM	Regular clay or concrete masonry	1 1	0.5 1	4.5 6
	CRW	Lightweight concrete masonry and other weak substrates	1 1	1 2	6 9
Second coat - Internal	CRF	Cement render base coats	1 1	1 2	6 9
Second coat - External	CRF	Cement render base coats	1 1	1 2	5 6

Mix proportion table – Gypsum finish coat, by volume

Mix type		Substrate	Upper and lower limits of proportions by volume			
			Gypsum	Cement	Lime putty	Sand
Gypsum finish coats	GPF	Cement render base coats	1 1	- -	1.5 2	- -

Mix proportion table – Gypsum finish coat, by weight

Gypsum plaster (kg)	Lime putty (kg)
17	25
34	50
51	75

Control joint products

General: Provide proprietary products manufactured for use with the plastering system and to accommodate the anticipated movement of the substrates and/or the plaster.

Water

General: Clean and free from any deleterious matter.

3 EXECUTION

GENERAL

Prototypes

3.1 PREPARATION

Substrates

General: Prepare substrates as follows:

- Clean and free from any deposit or finish that may impair adhesion of render or plaster.
- If framed or discontinuous, support members in full lengths without splicing.

- If solid or continuous, remove excessive projections and fill voids and hollows with render or plaster stronger than the first coat and not weaker than the substrate.

Absorbent substrates: If suction is excessive, control it by dampening without over-wetting. Do not render or plaster substrates showing surface moisture.

Dense concrete: If not sufficiently rough to provide a mechanical key, roughen to remove 2 mm of the laitance and expose the aggregate before applying a bonding treatment.

Painted surfaces: Remove paint and hack the surface at close intervals.

Untrue substrates: If the substrate is not sufficiently true for conformity with the thickness limits for the render or plaster system, or has excessively uneven suction resulting from variations in the composition of the substrate, apply additional coats without exceeding the thickness limits for the substrate or system.

Beads

Location: Fix beads as follows:

- Angle beads: At all external corners.
- Drip beads: At all lower terminations of external render.
- Beads for control of movement: At all control joints.
- Stop beads: At all terminations of render or plaster and junctions with other materials and render or plaster systems.

Joints in beads: Provide dowels to maintain alignment.

Mechanical fixing to substrate: ≤ 300 mm centres.

Bonding treatment

General: If bonding treatment is required to the substrate, throw a wet mix onto the substrate. Mix proportions to the following:

- Cement render (cement:sand): 1:2.
- Gypsum plaster (gypsum:sand): 1:2.

Curing: Cure as follows:

- Keep continuously moist for 5 days or more and allow to dry before applying render or plaster coats.
- Protect cement render from direct sun and drying winds for at least 16 hours after application.

Thickness: ≥ 3 mm and < 6 mm.

Embedded items

General: To the **Corrosion resistance and durability table**. If there are water pipes and other embedded items, sheath them to allow for thermal movement.

Lath

Location: Provide lath as follows:

- Chases: If chases or recesses are 50 mm wide or greater, fix lath extending 75 mm or more beyond each side of the chase or recess.
- Masonry and concrete substrates: If mechanical key cannot be attained by scabbling and bonding, fix lath.
- Metal and other non-porous substrates: Fix lath to provide a key.

Installation: Fix lath as follows:

- General: Run the long way of the mesh across supports with strands sloping downwards and inwards from the intended face of the render or plaster.
- Fixing: Mechanically fix at 150 mm maximum centres.
- Laps: Tie with 1.25 mm galvanized wire at centres of 150 mm or less. Do not stop edges of sheets at corners but bend around.
- On solid substrates: Space the lath 5 mm or more clear of the substrate.
- Support spacing: ≤ 400 mm.

3.2 APPLICATION

Rendering and plastering

Base coats: Scratch-comb each base coat in two directions when it has stiffened.

Lath: Press the render or plaster through the apertures of lath and wings of beads.

Incidental work

General: Return render or plaster into reveals, beads, sills, recesses and niches. Render or plaster faces, ends and soffits of projections in the substrate, such as string courses, sills, pilasters and corbels. Run neatly finished throating on soffits of external projections. Trim around openings. Plaster exposed internal surfaces of built-in joinery.

Joining up

General: If joining up is required, make sure joints are imperceptible in the finished work after decoration.

Control joints

General: Provide joints in the finish to coincide with control joints in the substrate. Make sure the joint in the substrate is not bridged during rendering or plastering.

Size:

- Depth: Extend the joint right through the render or plaster and reinforcement to the substrate.
- Width: 3 mm, or the same width as the substrate joint, whichever is greater.

Damp-proof courses: Do not continue render or plaster across damp-proof courses.

Rendering or plastering on lath: Provide control joints to divide the rendering or plastering area into rectangular panels of 10 m^2 or less.

V-joints: Provide V-joints, cut right through the render or plaster to the substrate, at the following locations:

- Abutments with metal door frames.
- Abutments with other finishes.
- Junctions between different substrates.

Cornices

General: Accurately cut and mitre corners. Match and align ornament. Do not make butt joints in the length of a cornice.

Installation: Butter edges, mitres and joins for the full length of the cornice with adhesive.

Mechanical fixing: If cornice projects across a ceiling 400 mm or more, provide additional mechanical fixing as follows:

- Fixing centres: ≤ 600 mm.

Render and plaster thickness table

Substrate	Render and plaster, total thickness of single or multi-coat work (mm)	Gypsum/lime plaster (mm)
Dense concrete walls	15 max	3 max
Dense concrete ceilings	9 max	3 max
Brickwork and blockwork	12 min	3 max
Lightweight concrete and blocks	12 min	3 max
Metal lath measured from the face of the lath.	18 min	3 max

Temperature

General: If the ambient temperature is less than 10°C or more than 30°C, make sure the temperature of mixes, substrates and reinforcement at the time of application is between 5°C and 35°C.

Unused mixes

General: Do not use render or plaster unused after 90 minutes from the time of mixing.

3.3 FINISHES

Finishing treatments

Plain even surfaces: Work the hardening plaster as follows:

- Bag: Rub the finish coat when set firm with a hessian bag or similar.
- Carborundum stone: Rub the finish coat when set hard with a carborundum stone to achieve a finish free from sand.
- Foam float: Float the finish coat on application with a wood or plastic float to an even surface and finish with a foam float to achieve a fine sand textured finish.
- Steel trowel: Steel trowel the finish coat to a smooth dense surface which is not glass-like and is free from shrinkage cracks and crazing.
- Wood or plastic float: Float the finish coat on application with a wood or plastic float to an even surface.

Ornamental patterned surfaces: Work the hardening plaster with a trowel or other tool for the documented type.

Sprayed textured surfaces: Spray plaster onto a substrate using a purpose-designed machine.

Stippled textured surfaces: Work the hardening plaster with a stiff brush.

Rough cast surfaces: Throw plaster onto a substrate or pebbles onto a plastic plaster base for the documented type.

Specialist plaster finishes

Polymer modified render:

- Base coat render: Proprietary polymer modified cementitious render supplied as a complete plastering system.
- Finish coats: Proprietary coloured and textured polymer modified finish coats.

Polished plaster: In situ applied plaster system incorporating selected stone dust in a proprietary matrix producing a smooth polished surface with visual patterning.

Glass bead coatings: Glass beads bound in a proprietary matrix.

3.4 COMPLETION

Curing

General: Prevent premature or uneven drying out and protect from the sun and wind.

Keeping moist: If a proprietary curing agent is not used, keep the render or plaster moist as follows:

- Base coats and single coat systems: Keep continuously moist for 2 days and allow to dry for 5 days before applying further render or plaster coats.
- Finish coats: Keep continuously moist for 2 days.

Multiple coats: Cure and dry each successive coat in multiple coat systems.

4 SELECTIONS

4.1 SCHEDULES

Rendering or plastering construction schedule

	A	B	C
Substrate			
Bonding treatment			
Bond coat			
Base coat(s)			
Finish coat			
Finishing treatment			

Specialist plastering systems schedule

	A	B	C
Substrate			
Plastering system			
Colour			
Texture			

Accessories schedule

	A	B	C
Product			
Beads			
Lath			

0621 WATERPROOFING - WET AREAS

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General
Requirement: Provide wet area waterproofing systems, as documented.

Performance
Requirements:

- Graded to floor wastes, to dispose of water without ponding.
- Able to prevent moisture entering the substrate or adjacent areas.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General
Requirement: Conform to the following:

- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 STANDARDS

Waterproofing wet areas
Standard: To AS 3740 (2021).

1.4 INTERPRETATION

Definitions
General: For the purposes of this worksection, the definitions given in AS 3740 (2021) and the following apply:

- Membranes (waterproof): Impervious barriers to liquid water, which may be:
  - . Installed below floor finishes.
  - . Installed behind the wall sheeting or render.
  - . Installed to the face of the wall sheeting or render.
  - . Applied in liquid or gel form and air cured to form a seamless film.
  - . Applied in sheet form with joints lapped and sealed.
- Waterproofing system: Combinations of membranes, flashings, drainage and accessories that form waterproof barriers and that may be:
  - . Loose-laid.
  - . Bonded to substrates.
- Wet area: An area within a building supplied with a floor waste.

1.5 SUBMISSIONS

Products and materials
Manufacturer’s data: Submit product data sheets.

Type tests: Submit certificates verifying conformance to AS/NZS 4858 (2004) Table 8.1.

Records
General: Submit photographic records to EXECUTION, **GENERAL**, **Reporting**.

Flood tests: Submit photographic records to **TESTING**, **Flood tests**.

Samples
Requirement: Submit samples to PRODUCTS, **GENERAL**, **Samples**.

Shop drawings
Requirement: Submit shop drawings showing the following:

- Junctions with vertical surfaces and upstands.
- Junctions at perimeters.
- Drainage details.
- Control joints.

- Flashings.
- Penetrations.
- Corners.
- Terminations and connections.
- Membrane layers.

Subcontractors
General: Submit names and contact details of proposed suppliers and installers as recommended by the manufacturer.
Evidence of experience: [complete/delete]
Substrate acceptance: Submit evidence of installer's acceptance of the flooring substrate before starting installation.

Tests
Site tests: Submit results, as follows:
- Substrate moisture content test.
- Flood test.
- Electronic leak detection test.
- Seam probe test.

Warranties
Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Error! Reference source not found.**.

1.6 INSPECTION

Notice
Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:
- Substrates prepared and ready for installation of the wet area waterproofing systems.
- Secondary layers prepared and ready for subsequent layers.
- Membranes after installation and before concealment.
- After flood testing, if applicable.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Samples
Requirement: Provide 300 x 300 mm samples of each type of membrane.

Storage and handling
General: Store and handle to the manufacturer's recommendations and as follows:
- Protect materials from damage.

2.2 MEMBRANES

Standards
Standard: To AS/NZS 4858 (2004).

Membrane system
Requirement: Proprietary membrane system suitable for the intended internal wet area waterproofing.
Certification: [complete/delete]

Total VOC limits
Requirement: Conform to the following maximum TVOC content:
- Waterproof membrane: 250 g/L.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

Shower tray
General: Purpose-made jointless shower tray, with wall upstands at least 50 mm higher than the hob upstands. Set hob on the inside of the tray upstands.

Waterstop angles
Material: Rigid, corrosion-resistant angles compatible with the waterproof membrane system.

Bond breakers
Requirement: Compatible with the extensibility class of the membrane to be used.

Material: Purpose-made bond breaker tapes or fillets of sealant.

Flashings
Requirement: Flexible waterproof flashings compatible with the waterproof membrane system.

Liquid membrane reinforcement
Requirement: Flexible fabric compatible with the waterproof membrane system.

Sealants
Requirement: Waterproof or water resistant, flexible, mould-resistant and compatible with the waterproofing system and to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Adhesives
Requirement: Waterproof and compatible with the waterproofing system.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

Prototypes

Reporting
General: Make progressive photographic records of the waterproofing installation. Label photographs with the date and location.

Timing: Record at the following stages:

- After substrate preparation.
- After primer application.
- After membrane installation.
- After protection from traffic provided.

Liquid applied membranes:

- Record wet film thickness once every 10 m^2 and compare to the manufacturer's requirements.
- On completion of every 100 m^2 of each coat, compare the amount of membrane used with the manufacturer's application rate and record the result.

3.2 PREPARATION

Substrates
General: Prepare substrates as follows:

- Clean and remove any deposit or finish that may impair adhesion of membranes.
- If walls are plastered, remove loose sand.
- If walls or floors are framed or discontinuous, make sure support members are in full lengths without splicing.
- If floors are solid or continuous:
  . Remove excessive projections.
  . Fill voids and hollows greater than 10 mm with abrupt edges with a cement:sand mix not stronger than the substrate nor weaker than the bedding.
  . Fill depressions less than 10 mm with a latex modified cementitious product with feathering eliminated by scabbling the edges.
  . Fill cracks in substrates wider than 1.5 mm with a filler compatible with the membrane system.

Concrete substrates: Cure for more than 28 days.

External corners: Round or arris edges.

Moisture content
Requirement: Verify that the moisture content of the substrate is compatible with the water vapour transmission rate of the membrane system by testing to the recommendations of AS 3740 (2021) Appendix F.

Falls
Membrane applied to substrate: Make sure the fall in the substrate conforms to the fall documented for the finish.

Sheet substrate fastening
Requirement: Provide fasteners compatible with the substrate. Mechanically fasten to the supporting structure.

Waterstop angles

Requirement: Provide waterstop angles at door thresholds and shower enclosures to support the waterproof membrane at junctions between waterproofed and non-waterproofed areas.

Sizing: Size the vertical leg of the waterstop angle to conform to the requirements of AS 3740 (2021).

Corners: Cut the horizontal leg and bend the vertical leg at corners instead of forming vertical joints between separate lengths of angle.

Fixing: Fix waterstop angles to the substrate with compatible sealant or adhesive and corrosion-resistant countersunk or wafer head screws.

Priming

Compatibility: If required, prime the substrates with compatible primers for adhesion of the membrane system.

Bond breakers

Requirement: After the priming of surfaces, provide bond breakers at wall/floor junctions, hob/wall junctions and at control joints where the membrane is bonded to the substrate.

Sealant fillet bond breakers:

- Application: Form a triangular fillet or cove of sealant to internal corners within the period recommended by the membrane manufacturer after the application of the primer.
- Width: Conform to AS 3740 (2021) Table 4.10.

3.3 INSTALLATION

Ambient conditions

Requirement: Do not install in conditions outside the manufacturer's recommendations.

Protection

Damage: Protect membrane from damage during installation and for the period after installation until the membrane achieves its service characteristics that resist damage and an overlaying finish is installed.

Extent of waterproofing

Waterproof or water resistant surfaces: To BCA (2022) F2D2.

Sheet membrane joints

Bituminous sheet membranes:

- Side laps: ≥ 75 mm.
- End laps: ≥ 150 mm.

Synthetic rubber membranes:

- Factory-vulcanized laps: ≥ 40 mm.
- Field side laps: ≥ 50 mm.
- Field end laps: ≥ 100 mm.

PVC membranes:

- Factory-welded laps: ≥ 40 mm.
- Field-welded laps: ≥ 75 mm.

Flashings

Junctions between waterproof surfaces: Provide a bond breaker at internal corners behind flashings.

Junctions between waterproof surfaces and other surfaces: Provide a bead of sealant at the following junctions:

- Waterproof and water resistant surfaces.
- Water resistant and water resistant surfaces.
- Water resistant and non-water resistant surfaces.

Perimeter flashings: Provide continuous flashings to the full perimeter of waterproof areas at wall/floor junctions and to waterstop angles.

Vertical flashings: Provide vertical corner flashings continuous across wall/wall junctions to at least 1800 mm above finished floor level of the shower or base of the bath or tray, or 50 mm above the shower rose, whichever is the higher.

Vertical liquid applied flashings:

- Return legs at least 40 mm on each wall.
- Overlap the vertical termination of the floor waterproofing membrane at least 20 mm.

Vertical sheet flashings:

- Return legs at least 50 mm on each wall.
- Overlap shower tray upstands at least 50 mm.
- Do not penetrate flashing with wall lining fasteners.

Reinforcement: At coves, corners and wall/floor junctions with gaps greater than 3 mm, reinforce liquid applied membranes with reinforcement fabric tape recommended by the membrane manufacturer. Fold the tape in half lengthways and embed it in the first coat of membrane with one half of the tape on each side of the corner or joint. Apply a second coat of membrane to seal the fabric.

Drainage connections

Floor wastes: Provide floor wastes of sufficient height to accommodate the thickness of floor finishes and bedding at the outlet position. Position leak control flange to drain at membrane level. Turn membrane down 50 mm minimum into the floor waste leak control flanges, and adhere to form a waterproof connection.

Floor wastes in shower trays: Provide drainage of the tile bed and a waterproof connection between the tray and the drain.

Preformed drainage channels:

- With continuous leak control flanges: Provide a continuous waterproof connection between the membrane and the channel.
- Without leak control flanges: Provide continuous waterproofing under the channel and terminate the membrane at a floor waste with a recessed leak control flange.

Vertical membrane terminations

Upstands:

- Shower areas with hobs and step-downs: Minimum 150 mm above the highest finished tile level of the shower area or 25 mm above the maximum retained water level, whichever is the greater.
- Shower areas without hobs: Minimum 150 mm above the highest finished tile level of the floor within the shower area.
- Shower areas with ceiling mounted shower rose: To the full height of the wall.
- Bath without an integral upstand edge without showers over: Minimum 150 mm above the shower rose connection.
- Bath with an integral upstand edge, bath with a shower over or bath adjoining an unenclosed shower: Minimum 150 mm above the bath edge.

Anchoring: Secure sheet membranes along the top edge.

Edge protection: Protect edges of the membrane.

Showers with hobs

General: Provide masonry, concrete or corrosion-resistant metal hobs. Fix securely to the floor, seal against walls and make flush all gaps, joints and intersections before applying the membrane.

Masonry or concrete hob: Extend membrane over the hob and into the room at least 50 mm.

- Autoclaved aerated concrete hobs: Prime before applying the membrane.

Metal hob: Provide metal angle with height at least 15 mm above the finished floor level of the floor outside the shower. Terminate the membrane within 5 mm from the top of the angle. Seal the gap between the shower screen and the angle.

Showers with step-downs

Level of shower area: At least 15 mm below the finished floor level outside the shower.

Framed shower screens:

- Terminate the membrane directly below the floor tiles below the shower screen sill mounted on the upper level of the step-down.
- Support and adhere the membrane to a waterstop angle fixed securely to the substrate.

Frameless shower screens:

- Install a waterstop angle where the base of the shower screen will be installed and across the opening of the shower.
- Install membranes on both sides of the waterstop angle and turn the membranes up against the angle. Extend the membrane at least 50 mm into the adjacent area
- Finish membrane flush with the underside of tiles.
- Provide a sealant joint between the waterstop angle and tiles.
- Install the shower screen with the inside face flush with the step-down.

Showers without hobs or step-downs

Framed shower screens:

- Install a waterstop angle directly below where the base of the shower screen sill will be installed.
- Size the angle so that the vertical leg finishes at least 5 mm above the level of the tiles.
- Support and adhere the membrane over the waterstop angle and extend the membrane at least 50 mm into the adjacent area.

Frameless shower screens:

- Install a waterstop angle directly below where the base of the shower screen will be installed.
- Support and adhere the membrane over the waterstop angle and extend the membrane at least 50 mm in to the adjacent area.
- Install a capping angle over the membrane and vertical leg of the waterstop angle to protect the exposed membrane.
- Install the shower screen over the capping angle.

Framed or frameless shower screens with trench drain located below screen:

- Install a waterstop angle where the outer edge of the trench drain to the perimeter of the shower will be installed.
- Size the angle so that the vertical leg finishes at the underside of the tiles.
- Support and adhere the membrane over the waterstop angle and terminate the membrane at floor wastes as documented in **Drainage connections**.
- Install the trench drain with the shower screen located vertically above it.

Unenclosed showers

Requirement: Extend membrane at least 1500 mm into the room from the shower rose outlet, on the walls and floor.

Preformed shower bases

Preformed shower bases with integral perimeter upstands:

- Support shower bases to prevent distortion or cracking.
- Recess shower base into walls or batten off wall lining sufficiently to allow water resistant wall finishes to overlap the integral upstands along the top edge of the shower base.
- Maintain the structural integrity of walls that are rebated.

Baths and spas

Baths with integral upstands:

- Recess bath edges into walls or batten off wall lining sufficiently to allow water resistant wall finishes to overlap the integral upstands.
- Maintain the structural integrity of walls that are rebated.

Baths without integral upstands or with showers over:

- Form a rebate in the wall to receive the bath edge.
  - . Rendered masonry walls: Form or chase in the render.
  - . Framed and lined walls: Form in the wall lining with a corrosion-resistant lipped channel.
- Waterproof the wall above and below the rebate, including the rebate, and the floor area under the bath.
- Seal the edge of the bath into the rebate.

Plinth-mounted insert baths and spas:

- Line framed enclosures for insert baths.
- Form an upstand on the inside edge of the enclosure opening to receive the bath with an angle or compressible foam rod.
- Waterproof walls abutting the enclosure, the top of the plinth and the interior and exterior of the enclosure.
- After tiling the walls, top of the plinth and exterior of the enclosure, install the bath with its downturn edge lip outside the upstand formed on the edge of the opening and seal the lip to the tiles.
- Minimum dimension from wall or free edge of the plinth to insert bath: 100 mm.

Taps and spouts

Requirement: Waterproof penetrations for taps and spouts with preformed flange systems or a sealant.

Provision for servicing: Install taps so tap washers or ceramic discs can be serviced without damaging the waterproofing or seal.

Wall recesses
Requirement: Support all faces of the recess and line with the same sheet material as the adjacent wall. Fall base of recess towards the shower area. Flash all junctions and waterproof all surfaces.

Curing of liquid membrane systems
General: To the manufacturer's recommendations.

Curing: Allow membrane to fully cure before tiling.

Overlaying finishes on membranes
Requirement: Protect waterproof membranes with compatible water resistant surface materials that do not cause damage to the membrane.

Suitable materials: Conform to AS 3740 (2021).

Bonded or partially bonded membranes: If the topping or bedding mortar is to be bonded to the membrane, provide sufficient control joints in the topping or bedding mortar to reduce the movement over the membrane.

3.4 TESTING

Substrate tests
Moisture content: Test substrate for suitability for the installation of membranes to AS 3740 (2021) Appendix F.

- Maximum relative humidity of concrete or cementitious screeds: To AS 3740 (2021) Appendix F2.4.
- Moisture content of timber and plywood substrates: To AS 3740 (2021) Appendix F2.3.

Flood tests
Requirement: To AS 3740 (2021) Appendix C2.

Records:

- Make photographic records of the flooded areas and adjacent areas.
- Label photographs with the date and location.

Electronic leak detection test
Requirement: To AS 3740 (2021) Appendix C3.

Seam probe test
Requirement: To AS 3740 (2021) Appendix C4.

3.5 COMPLETION

Reinstatement
Extent: Repair or replace faulty or damaged work. If the work cannot be repaired satisfactorily, replace the whole area affected.

Warranties
Type: [complete/delete]

Period: [complete/delete]

4 SELECTIONS

4.1 SYSTEMS

Liquid membrane system schedule

	A	B	C
Proprietary system			
Material type			
Tensile stress at break (MPa)			
Tensile strain (elongation at break) (%)			
Method of application			
Number of coats			
Application rate (L/m^2)			
Dry film thickness (total) (mm)			
Reinforcement			
Primer			

	A	B	C
Base layer			
Top layer			
Waterstop angles			
Bond breakers			

Single layer sheet membrane system schedule

	A	B	C
Proprietary system			
System type			
Sheet type			
Sheet thickness (mm)			
Base weight (kg/m^2)			
Tensile strength (MPa)			
Tensile strain (elongation at break) (%)			
Method of application			
Primer			
Bonding agent			
Waterstop angles			
Bond breakers			

Shower tray schedule

	A	B	C
Material			
Dimensions (mm)			
Surface protection/finish			

0631B CERAMIC TILING

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General
Requirement: Provide tiling systems to walls, floors and other substrates, as documented.

Performance
Requirements:
- Consistent in colour and finish.
- Firmly bonded to substrates for the expected life of the installation.
- Set out with joints accurately aligned in both directions and wall tiling joints level and plumb.
- Direct all water flowing from supply points to drainage outlets without leakage to the substrate or adjacent areas.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General
Requirement: Conform to the following:
- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 STANDARDS

Tiling
General: Conform to the recommendations of those parts of AS 3958 (2023) referenced in this worksection.

Slip resistance
Classification: To AS 4586 (2013).

1.4 TOLERANCES

Completed tiling
Requirement: To the recommendations of AS 3958 (2023) clause 5.4.8.

1.5 SUBMISSIONS

Operation and maintenance manuals
Requirement: Submit manual to **COMPLETION**, **Operation and maintenance manuals**.

Products and materials
Type tests: Submit results, as follows:
- Slip resistance test: To AS 4586 (2013).
- Accelerated wear test: To AS 4586 (2013).

Evidence of delivery: Submit delivery docket as evidence of delivery of specified tiles.

Samples
Requirement: Submit samples to PRODUCTS, **GENERAL**, **Samples**.

Warranties
Requirement: Submit warranties to **COMPLETION**, **Warranties**.

1.6 INSPECTION

Notice
Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:
- Substrate immediately before tiling.
- Control joints before sealing and grouting.
- Grout and sealant colours before application.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Samples
Requirement: Provide labelled samples of tiles, including accessories, grout and sealants, showing the range of variation in colour and finish.

Sample panels: Prepare a sample panel of each type of tiling system as follows:

- Size: > 2 m^2.
- Include samples of junction details and trim.
- Preserve the panel until related work is complete.

2.2 UNDERLAY

Fibre cement underlay
Standard: To AS/NZS 2908.2 (2000), Type B, category 2 minimum.

Thickness: 6 mm minimum.

Acoustic underlay
General: Provide a proprietary product recommended by the manufacturer as compatible with the tiling system.

2.3 TILES AND ACCESSORIES

Tiles
Standard: To AS 13006 (2020).

Coves, nosings and skirtings: Provide matching stop-end, and internal and external angle tiles moulded for that purpose.

Exposed edges: Provide purpose-made border tiles with the exposed edge (whether round, square or cushion) glazed to match the tile face. If such tiles are not available, mitre tiles on external corners or use proprietary trim.

Accessories
General: Provide tile accessories that match the composition, colour and finish of the surrounding tiles.

Tile trim: Provide proprietary trim for wall tiles and floor tiles, as documented.

Tactile ground surface indicators
Standard: To AS/NZS 1428.4.1 (2009).

2.4 ADHESIVES

General
Standard: To AS ISO 13007.1 (2020).

Type
General: Provide adhesives compatible with the materials and surfaces to be adhered, and as documented.

Prohibited uses: Do not provide the following combinations:

- Cement-based adhesives on wood, metal, painted or glazed surfaces, gypsum-based plaster.
- Organic solvent-based adhesives on painted surfaces.
- Organic PVC-based adhesives and organic natural rubber latex adhesives in damp or wet conditions.
- PVA (polyvinyl acetate) based adhesives in wet areas or externally.

2.5 MORTAR

Materials
Cement type to AS 3972 (2010): GP.

- White cement: Iron salts content ≤ 1%.
- Off-white cement: Iron salts content ≤ 2.5%.

Lime: To AS 1672.1 (1997).

Sand: Fine aggregate with a low clay content selected for grading, sharp and free from efflorescing salts.

Measurement of volume: Measure binders and sand by volume using buckets or boxes. Do not allow sand to bulk by absorption of water.

Bedding mortar
Mix proportion (cement:sand), by volume: Select proportions from the range 1:3 to 1:4 for satisfactory adhesion. Provide minimum water.

Terracotta tiles: Use proprietary polymer modified mortar.

Mixing: To AS 3958 (2023) clause 5.5.

Water
General: Clean and free from any deleterious matter.

2.6 GROUT

Type
Cement based proprietary grout: Mix with water. Fine sand may be added as a filler in wider joints.

Terracotta tiles: Use proprietary polymer modified grout.

General purpose cement based grout: Mix with fine sand. Provide minimum water consistent with workability.

Mix proportions (cement:sand), by volume:

- For joints < 3 mm: 1:2.
- For joints ≥ 3 mm: 1:3.

Epoxy grout: As documented.

Pigments
Pigments for coloured grout: Provide colourfast fillers compatible with the grout material. For cement-based grouts, provide lime-proof natural or synthetic metallic oxides compatible with cement.

2.7 CONTROL JOINTS

Control joint materials
Control joint strip: A proprietary control joint consisting of a neoprene core sandwiched between metal plates with lugs or ribs for mechanical keying. Set flush with the finished surface.

Proprietary slide plate divider strip: An arrangement of interlocking metal plates grouted into pockets formed in the concrete joint edges.

Sealant: One-part self-levelling non-hardening mould resistant, silicone or polyurethane sealant applied over a backing rod. Finish flush with the finished surface.

- Floors: Trafficable, Shore hardness greater than 35A.

Backing rod: Compressible closed cell polyethylene foam with a bond breaking surface.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 SUBSTRATES

Drying and shrinkage
General: Before tiling, allow at least the following times to elapse (for initial drying out and shrinkage) for these substrates:

- Concrete slabs: 42 days.
- Concrete blockwork: 28 days.
- Toppings on slabs and rendering on brick or blockwork: A further 21 days.
- Rendered swimming pool shell: A further 21 days minimum.

3.2 PREPARATION

Standard
Preparation: To the recommendations of AS 3958 (2023) Section 4.

Ambient temperature
General: If the ambient temperature is less than 5°C or greater than 35°C, do not lay tiles.

Substrates without wet area membranes
General: Make sure substrates are as follows:

- Clean and free of any deposit or finish that may impair adhesion or location of tiles.
- If framed or discontinuous, support members are in full lengths without splicing.
- If solid or continuous:

. Remove excessive projections.
. Fill voids and hollows greater than 10 mm with abrupt edges with a cement:sand mix not stronger than the substrate or weaker than the bedding.
. Fill depressions less than 10 mm with a latex modified cementitious product and eliminate feathering by scabbling the edges.

Absorbent substrates: If suction is excessive, control it by dampening but avoid over-wetting and do not apply mortar bedding to substrates showing surface moisture.

Dense concrete: If not sufficiently rough to provide a mechanical key, roughen by scabbling or the like to remove 3 mm of the surface and expose the aggregate; then apply a bonding treatment.

Substrates with wet area membranes

General: Make sure substrates are as follows:

- Clean and free of any deposit or finish that may impair adhesion or location of tiles.
- Compatible with all components of the floor system.

3.3 FIXING UNDERLAY

Installation

Requirement: Lay in staggered (brick) pattern, perpendicular to the direction of the subfloor, with joins in the underlay not coinciding with joints in the subfloor. Fix with fasteners and fastener spacing to the manufacturers recommendations. If panels are not tongue and grooved, make sure edges are fully supported.

Membranes: If sheet flooring is the substrate for a wet area membrane, fix with stainless steel countersunk head screws.

3.4 TILING GENERALLY

Sequence

General: [complete/delete]

Cutting and laying

Cutting: Cut tiles neatly to fit around fixtures and at margins where necessary. Drill holes without damaging tile faces. Cut recesses for fixtures such as soap holders. Rub edges smooth without chipping.

Laying: Return tiles into sills, reveals and openings. Butt up to returns, frames, fixtures, and other finishes. Strike and point up beds where exposed. Remove tile spacers before grouting.

Variations

General: Distribute variations in hue, colour, or pattern uniformly, by mixing tiles or tile batches before laying.

Protection

Floor tiles: Keep traffic off floor tiles until the bedding has set and attained its working strength.

Cleaning: Keep the work clean as it proceeds and protect finished work from damage.

Bath ventilation

General: If required, ventilate the space below fully enclosed baths with at least 2 vermin proof ventilating tiles.

3.5 SETTING OUT

Tile layout

Requirement: Set out tiles as documented, allowing for control joints, or as follows if desired layout is undocumented:

- General tiling: Provide whole or purpose-made tiles at margins where practicable, otherwise, set out to give equal margins of cut tiles. If margins less than half a tile width are unavoidable, locate the cut tiles where they are least conspicuous. Align floor and wall tile joints, where possible.
- Feature tiling: Provide trial set out for large or complex areas and patterns.

Tile joints

Joint widths: Set out tiles to give uniform joint widths within the following limits:

- Floors:
  . Dry pressed tiles: 3 mm.
  . Extruded tiles: 6 mm.
  . Vitrified: 3 to 5 mm.
  . Quarry tiles: 6 to 12 mm.
  . Chemical resistant epoxy jointed tiling: 5 to 6 mm.

- Large and/or irregular floor tiles: 6 to 12 mm.
- Mounted mosaics: To match mounting pattern.
- Walls:
  . Dry pressed tile: 1.5 mm.
  . Extruded tile: 6 mm.

Joint alignment: Set out tiling with joints accurately aligned in both directions and wall tiling joints level and plumb.

Fixtures

General: If possible, position tiles so that holes for fixtures and other penetrations occur at the intersection of horizontal and vertical joints or on the centrelines of tiles. Continue tiling fully behind fixtures that are not built in to the tiling surface. Before tiling make sure fixtures interrupting the tile surfaces are accurately positioned in their designed or optimum locations relative to the tile layout.

3.6 FALLS AND LEVELS

Grading

Requirement: Grade floor tiling to even and correct falls to floor wastes and elsewhere as required. Make level junctions with walls. Where falls are not required, lay level.

Fall: Conform to falls as documented and the following:

- Falls to floor wastes: 1:80 minimum.
- Continuous fall of floor plane to floor waste for NCC Classes 1, 2, 3 and 4 parts of a building: 1:50 maximum.

Change of finish: Maintain finished floor level across changes of floor finish including carpet.

3.7 BEDDING

Standard

Adhesive: To AS 3958 (2023) clause 5.6.

Cement mortar: To AS 3958 (2023) clause 5.5.

Preparation of tiles

Adhesive bedding: Fix tiles dry; do not soak.

Mortar bedding: Soak porous tiles in water for half an hour and then drain until the surface water has disappeared.

Terracotta tiles: Use pre-sealed tiles or apply a breathable sealer and lay dry. If a final sealed finish is selected, use a compatible laying sealer.

Bedding

General: Use bedding methods and materials that are appropriate to the tile, the substrate, the conditions of service, and which leave the tile firmly and solidly bedded in the bedding material and adhered to the substrate. Form falls integral with the substrate.

Thin adhesive beds

General: Provide only if the substrate deviation is less than 3 mm, tested with a 3 m straightedge. Cover the entire tile back with adhesive when the tile is bedded.

Thickness: 1.5 to 3 mm.

Thick adhesive beds

General: Provide on substrates with deviations up to 6 mm, tested with a 3 m straightedge, and with tiles having deep keys or frogs.

Nominal thickness: 6 mm.

Adhesive bedding application

General: Apply adhesive by notched trowel to walls and floors and direct to tiles if required, to provide evenly distributed coverage after laying as follows:

- Domestic internal walls: > 65%.
- Domestic internal floors: > 80%.
- Other walls and floors: > 90%.
- Wet areas and benchtops: 100%.

Pattern of distribution of adhesive: To the recommendations of AS 3958 (2023) clause 5.6.5. Verify by examining one tile in ten as work proceeds.

Wall tile spacers: Do not use spacer types that inhibit the distribution of adhesive.

Curing: Allow the adhesive to cure for the period nominated by the manufacturer before grouting or allowing foot traffic.

Mortar beds

For floor tiles: Either lightly dust the screeded bed surface with dry cement and trowel level until the cement is damp, or spread a thin slurry of neat cement, or cement-based thin bed adhesive, on to the tile back. Do not use mortar after initial set has occurred.

- Nominal thickness: 20 to 40 mm.

Thick reinforced beds: Place mortar bed in two layers, and incorporate the mesh reinforcement in the first layer.

3.8 CONTROL OF MOVEMENT

General

Requirement: Provide control joints carried through the tile and the bedding to the recommendations of AS 3958 (2023) clause 5.4.7 and as follows:

- Floor location:
  - . Over structural control joints.
  - . To divide complex room plans into rectangles.
  - . Around the perimeter of the floor.
  - . At junctions between different substrates.
  - . To divide large tiled areas into bays.
  - . At abutments with the building structural frame and over supporting walls or beams where flexing of the substrate is anticipated.
- Wall location:
  - . Over structural control joints.
  - . At junctions with different substrate materials when the tiling is continuous.
  - . At vertical internal corners.
- Depth of joint: Right through to the substrate.
- Sealant width: 6 to 25 mm.
- Depth of elastomeric sealant: One half the joint width, or 6 mm, whichever is the greater.

3.9 GROUTED AND SEALANT JOINTS

Grouted joints

General: Commence grouting as soon as practicable after bedding has set. Clean out joints as necessary and remove any tile spacers before grouting.

Face grouting: Fill the joints solid and tool flush. Clean off surplus grout. Wash down when the grout has set. When grout is dry, polish the tiled surface with grout film remover and a clean cloth.

Edges of tiles: Grout exposed edge joints.

Epoxy grouted joints: Make sure tile edge surfaces are free of extraneous matter such as cement films or wax, before grouting.

Mosaic tiles

Grouting mosaics: If paper faced mosaics are to be bedded in cement mortar, pre-grout the sheeted mosaics from the back before fixing. After fixing, rub grout into the surface of the joints to fill any voids left from pre-grouting. Clean off surplus grout. When grout has set, wash down. If necessary, use a proprietary cement remover.

Sealant joints

General: Provide joints filled with sealant and finished flush with the tile surface as follows:

- Where tiling is cut around sanitary fixtures.
- At internal corners of walls.
- Around fixtures interrupting the tile surface, for example pipes, brackets, bolts and nibs.
- At junctions with elements such as window and door frames and built-in cupboards.

Material: Anti-fungal modified silicone.

Width: 5 mm.

Depth: Equal to the tile thickness.

3.10 JOINT ACCESSORIES

Floor finish dividers

General: Finish tiled floors at junctions with differing floor finishes with a corrosion-resistant metal dividing strip fixed to the substrate using mechanical fixings, with top edge flush with the finished floor. If changes of floor finish occur at doorways, make the junction directly below the closed door. Grout up underneath to provide continuous support.

Type: [complete/delete]

Material: [complete/delete]

Stepping: Less than 3 mm.

Wall trim

General: Provide where documented. Install flush with adjacent tile surfaces and to manufacturer's recommendations.

Type: [complete/delete]

Material: [complete/delete]

Colour: [complete/delete]

Adjustments

Requirement: Check that the height of the floor finish divider is sufficient for the topping and tile thickness. Adjust as required with a matching flat bar adhesive fixed to the divider angle.

Weather bars

General: Provide corrosion-resistant metal weather bars or threshold plates under hinged external doors, located under the centres of closed doors or to manufacturer’s recommendations.

Type: [complete/delete]

Material: [complete/delete]

Finish: [complete/delete]

Dimensions: [complete/delete]

Fixing: [complete/delete]

3.11 COMPLETION

Cleaning

General: Clean tiled surfaces using an appropriate tile cleaning agent, and polish.

Spare tiles

General: Supply spare matching tiles and accessories of each type for future replacement purposes. Store the spare materials on site.

Quantity: At least 1% of the quantity installed.

Storage location: [complete/delete]

Operation and maintenance manuals

Requirement: Prepare a manual describing care and maintenance of the tiling, including procedures for maintaining the slip-resistance classification stating the expected life of the slip-resistance classification.

Warranties

Type: [complete/delete]

Period: [complete/delete]

0671B PAINTING

1 GENERAL

1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

General
Requirement: Provide coating systems to substrates, as documented.

1.2 CROSS REFERENCES

General
Requirement: Conform to the following:
- *0171 General requirements*.

1.3 STANDARDS

Painting
General: To the recommendations of those parts of AS/NZS 2311 (2017) referenced in this worksection.

1.4 SUBMISSIONS

Products and materials
General: Submit the following at least 3 weeks before the paint is required:
- Paint brand name and product range quality statement.
- The published recommendations for maintenance.

Samples
Requirement: Submit samples to PRODUCTS, **GENERAL**, **Samples**.

1.5 INSPECTION

Notice
Inspection: Give notice so that inspection may be made of the following:
- Opaque paint finishes:
  . After surface preparation.
  . After application of final coat.
- Clear finishes
  . Before surface preparation of timber.
  . After surface preparation.
  . After application of final coat.

2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

Storage and handling
General: Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with temperatures maintained at the manufacturer’s recommendations.

Delivery: Deliver paints to the site in the manufacturer's labelled and unopened containers.

2.2 PAINTING MATERIALS

Standards
Paint types: To AS/NZS 2311 (2017) Table 4.2 and the following:
- Metal primer - general purpose for iron and steel: To AS/NZS 3750.19 (2008).
- Metal primer - latex for metallic zinc surfaces: To AS 3730.15 (2006).
- Metal primer - solvent-borne for ferrous metallic surfaces: To AS 3730.21 (2006).
- Metal primer - zinc-rich organic for iron and steel: To AS/NZS 3750.9 (2009).

Combinations
General: Do not combine products from different manufacturers in a paint system.

Clear timber finish systems: Provide only the combinations of putty, stain and sealer recommended by the manufacturer of the topcoat.

Putty and fillers
Material: To the recommendations of the paint system manufacturer, suitable for the substrate and compatible with the primer.

Tinting
General: Provide only products that are colour tinted by the manufacturer or supplier.

Toxic ingredients
General: To the *Therapeutic Goods (Poisons standard) Instrument (2023)* Part 2 Division 9.

3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Order of work
Other trades: Complete the work of other trades as far as practicable within the area to be painted, except for the installation of fittings, floor sanding and laying flooring materials.

Clear finishes: Complete clear timber finishes before applying opaque paint finishes in the same area.

Protection
General: Clean the area and protect from dust contamination. Use drop sheets and masking agents to protect surfaces, including finished surfaces and adjacent finishes, during painting.

Fittings and furniture: Remove door furniture, switch plates, light fittings and other fittings. Attach labels or mark fittings using a non-permanent method, identifying location and refixing instructions, if required. Store and protect against damage.

Difficult to remove fittings fixtures: If removal is impractical or difficult, apply surface protection before substrate preparation and painting.

Substrates
General: Prepare substrates to receive the documented paint systems to the manufacturer's recommendations and as follows:

- Generally: Clean the substrate surface without damaging the substrate or the surroundings.
- Timber surfaces where clear finishes will be applied: Prepare the surface so that its attributes will show through the clear finish without blemishes, including the following:
  . Remove bruises.
  . Remove discolourations, including staining by oil, grease and nail heads.
  . Bleach where necessary to match the timber colour sample.
  . Fine sanding, with the last abrasive no coarser than 220 grit, so that there are no scratches across the grain.
- Sound external surfaces other than timber: Prepare the surface as follows:
  . Remove dirt, grease, loose and foreign matter, efflorescence and mould by water blasting or steam cleaning without damaging the surface.
  . Remove remaining loose material with hand tools.
  . Use sanding blocks to preserve the arrises of masonry and stone details.

Filling: Conform to the following:

- Generally: Fill cracks and holes with fillers, sealants, putties or grouting cements as appropriate for the finishing system and substrate, and sand smooth:
- Timber surfaces where clear finishes will be applied: Provide filler or putty tinted to match the surface.

Efflorescence: Before cleaning, eliminate the source of salt and water. Before repainting, allow surface to dry for 15 to 30 days.

New masonry: Before painting, allow masonry to cure and pH level to stabilise for 30 days.

Treated surfaces: If surfaces have been treated with preservatives or fire retardants, make sure the coating system is compatible with the treatment and does not adversely affect its performance.

Substrate moisture content
Requirement: Use a moisture meter to demonstrate that the moisture content of the substrate is at or below the recommended maximum level for the type of paint and the substrate material.

Unpainted surfaces
Standard: To AS/NZS 2311 (2017) Section 3.

Previously painted surfaces
General: Prepare previously painted surfaces, as documented.

Preparation of a substrate in good condition: To AS/NZS 2311 (2017) clause 7.4.

Preparation of a substrate in poor condition: To AS/NZS 2311 (2017) clause 7.5.

Preparation of steel substrates with protective coatings: To AS 2312.1 (2014) Section 8 and AS 1627.1 (2003).

PVC-U: Clean with methylated spirit and a nylon scouring pad.

Wallcovering: Remove wallcovering and residual paste with clean water. Patch and repair substrate to a uniform surface before painting.

Lime wash paints: Remove by brushing with warm water or pressure washing.

Reconditioned damaged surfaces in galvanized steel: To AS/NZS 4680 (2006) Section 8.

3.2 PAINTING SYSTEMS

General
Number of coats: Except where one or two coat systems are documented, provide each coating systems with at least 3 coats or to the manufacturer's recommendations.

New unpainted interior surfaces
Standard: To AS/NZS 2311 (2017) Table 5.1.

New unpainted exterior surfaces
Standard: To AS/NZS 2311 (2017) Table 5.2.

Previously painted interior surfaces
Standard: To AS/NZS 2311 (2017) Table 8.2.

Previously painted exterior surfaces
Standard: To AS/NZS 2311 (2017) Table 8.3.

Specialised paint systems
Standard: To AS/NZS 2311 (2017) clause 5.2

3.3 APPLICATION

General
Standard: To AS/NZS 2311 (2017) Section 6.

Timing: Apply the first coat immediately after substrate preparation and before contamination of the substrate can occur. Apply subsequent coats after the manufacturer's recommended drying period has elapsed.

Light levels
General: ≥ 400 lux.

Conditions
General: Unless the coating is recommended by the manufacturer for such conditions, do not apply under the following conditions:

- Rainy conditions.
- Dusty conditions.
- Relative humidity: > 85%.
- Surface temperature: < 10°C or > 35°C.
- Temperature: Within 3°C of the dew point.

Priming timber before fixing
General: Before fixing in position, apply 1 coat of wood primer and 2 coats to end grain to the back of the following:

- External fascia boards.
- Timber door and window frames.
- Tops and bottoms of external doors.
- Associated trim and glazing beads.

- Timber board cladding.

Spraying

General: If the application is by spraying, use conventional or airless equipment that conforms to the following:

- Satisfactorily atomises coating being applied.
- Does not require coating to be thinned beyond the maximum amount recommended by the manufacturer.
- Does not introduce oil, water or other contaminants into the applied coating.

Coatings with known health hazards: Not permitted on site.

Sanding

Clear finishes: Sand the sealer using abrasives no coarser than 320 grit without cutting through the colour. Take special care with round surfaces and edges.

Repair

Requirement: Clean off marks, paint spots and stains progressively and restore damaged surfaces to their original condition.

Repair of galvanizing

Cleaning: For galvanized surfaces that have been subsequently welded, power tool grind to remove all surface contaminants, including rust and weld splatter. Prime affected area immediately after cleaning.

Primer: Type 2 organic zinc-rich coating for the protection of steel to AS/NZS 3750.9 (2009).

Windows

Operation: Make sure opening windows function correctly before and after painting.

Doors

Drying: Maintain door leaf in the open position during drying. Do not allow door hardware or accessories to damage the door finish during the drying process.

Wet paint warning

Notices: Place notices in a conspicuous location and do not remove until the paint is dry.

3.4 COMPLETION

General

Protection and masking: Remove masking and protection coverings before paint has dried.

Cleaning: Remove splatters by washing, scraping or other methods that do not scratch or damage the surface.

Reinstatement: Repair, replace or refinish any damage, including damage made by other trades. Touch up new damaged paintwork or misses only with the paint batch used in the original application.

Fittings: Refix removed and undamaged fittings in the original locations. Make sure they are properly fitted and in proper working order.

Disposal of paint and waste materials

Requirement: Conform to requirements of the local authority.